

Police Reform and Social Responsibility Bill

EXPLANATORY NOTES

Explanatory notes to the Bill, prepared by the Home Office, are published separately as Bill 116 – EN.

EUROPEAN CONVENTION ON HUMAN RIGHTS

Secretary Theresa May has made the following statement under section 19(1)(a) of the Human Rights Act 1998:

In my view the provisions of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Bill are compatible with the Convention rights.

Police Reform and Social Responsibility Bill

CONTENTS

PART 1

POLICE REFORM

CHAPTER 1

POLICE AREAS OUTSIDE LONDON

Police and crime commissioners and chief constables

- 1 Police and crime commissioners
- 2 Chief constables

CHAPTER 2

METROPOLITAN POLICE DISTRICT

- 3 Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime
- 4 Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis

CHAPTER 3

FUNCTIONS OF ELECTED LOCAL POLICING BODIES ETC

Community safety and crime prevention

- 5 Police and crime commissioners to issue police and crime plans
- 6 Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime to issue police and crime plans
- 7 Police and crime plans
- 8 Duty to have regard to police and crime plan
- 9 Crime and disorder reduction grants
- 10 Co-operative working

Information, consultation etc

- 11 Information for public etc
- 12 Annual reports
- 13 Information for police and crime panels

- 14 Arrangements for obtaining the views of the community on policing

Other provisions about functions

- 15 Supply of goods and services
 16 Appointment of persons not employed by elected local policing bodies
 17 Duties when carrying out functions
 18 Delegation of functions by police and crime commissioners
 19 Delegation of functions by Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime
 20 Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime: confirmation hearings

Financial matters

- 21 Police fund
 22 Minimum budget for police and crime commissioner
 23 Minimum budget for Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime
 24 Police grant
 25 Other grants etc under Police Act 1996
 26 Precepts
 27 Other grants etc

CHAPTER 4

ACCOUNTABILITY OF ELECTED LOCAL POLICING BODIES

Scrutiny of police and crime commissioners

- 28 Police and crime panels of local authorities
 29 Power to require attendance and information
 30 Suspension of police and crime commissioner

Conduct of police and crime commissioners

- 31 Conduct of commissioners

Scrutiny of Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime

- 32 London Assembly police and crime panel
 33 Functions to be discharged by police and crime panel

CHAPTER 5

POLICE FORCES IN AREAS WITH ELECTED LOCAL POLICING BODIES

Chief officers of police

- 34 Engagement with local people
 35 Value for money
 36 Reports for elected local policing bodies
 37 Appointment of persons not employed by chief officers of police

Police forces outside London

- 38 Appointment, suspension and removal of chief constables

- 39 Deputy chief constables
- 40 Assistant chief constables
- 41 Power of deputy to exercise functions of chief constable

The metropolitan police force

- 42 Appointment of Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis
- 43 Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis
- 44 Functions of Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis
- 45 Assistant Commissioners of Police of the Metropolis
- 46 Deputy Assistant Commissioners of Police for the Metropolis
- 47 Commanders
- 48 Suspension and removal of Commissioner and Deputy Commissioner
- 49 Suspension and removal of other senior metropolitan police officers

CHAPTER 6

POLICE AND CRIME COMMISSIONERS: ELECTIONS AND VACANCIES

Holding of elections

- 50 Ordinary elections
- 51 Election to fill vacancy in office of commissioner
- 52 Persons entitled to vote
- 53 Public awareness about elections: role of Electoral Commission

Conduct of elections

- 54 Returning officers etc
- 55 Returning officers: expenditure
- 56 Taxation of returning officer's account
- 57 Voting at elections of police and crime commissioners
- 58 Power to make provision about elections etc

Vacancy in office of police and crime commissioner

- 59 Date of vacancy in office of commissioner
- 60 Declaration of vacancy in certain cases
- 61 Resignation of commissioner

Vacancy or incapacity

- 62 Appointment of acting commissioner
- 63 Vacancy where acting commissioner acts for 6 months

Disqualification

- 64 Disqualification from election as police and crime commissioner
- 65 Police and crime commissioner not to serve for more than two terms
- 66 Disqualification from election or holding office as police and crime commissioner: police grounds
- 67 Disqualification from election or holding office as police and crime commissioner: other grounds
- 68 Disqualification of person holding office as police and crime commissioner

- 69 Citizenship condition
- 70 Validity of acts

Elections: further provision

- 71 Declaration of acceptance of office of police and crime commissioner
- 72 Judicial proceedings as to disqualification or vacancy
- 73 Police and crime commissioners not to sit or vote in House of Lords
- 74 Amendment of police areas: term of office of commissioner
- 75 Computation of time and timing of elections etc
- 76 Elections: consequential amendments
- 77 The appropriate officer
- 78 Interpretation of Chapter 6

CHAPTER 7

OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO POLICING AND CRIME AND DISORDER

Requirement for national policing capabilities

- 79 The strategic policing requirement

Duties and powers of Secretary of State

- 80 General duty of Secretary of State
- 81 Obtaining advice from representative bodies
- 82 Abolition of certain powers of Secretary of State
- 83 Suspension and removal of senior police officers

Her Majesty's inspectors of constabulary

- 84 Functions of HMIC
- 85 HMIC reports: publication
- 86 Inspection programmes and frameworks
- 87 Powers in connection with HMIC inspections
- 88 HMIC and freedom of information

Community safety partnerships

- 89 Crime and disorder strategies

Policing in England and Wales

- 90 Collaboration agreements
- 91 Police powers for civilian employees under collaboration agreements
- 92 Power to give directions
- 93 Provision of information by chief officers of police
- 94 Regulations about provision of equipment
- 95 National and international functions

CHAPTER 8

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

- 96 Interpretation of Police Act 1996
- 97 Amendments of the Interpretation Act 1978
- 98 Transitional provision
- 99 Minor and consequential amendments
- 100 Guidance
- 101 Crime and disorder reduction
- 102 Interpretation of Part 1

PART 2

LICENSING

CHAPTER 1

AMENDMENTS OF THE LICENSING ACT 2003

Responsible authorities

- 103 Licensing authorities as responsible authorities
- 104 Primary Care Trusts and Local Health Boards as responsible authorities

Removing the vicinity test

- 105 Premises licences: who may make relevant representations
- 106 Premises licences: who may apply for review
- 107 Club premises certificates: who may make relevant representations
- 108 Club premises certificates: who may apply for review

Reducing the evidential burden on licensing authorities

- 109 Reducing the burden: premises licences
- 110 Reducing the burden: club premises certificates
- 111 Reducing the burden: other situations

Temporary event notices

- 112 Temporary event notices: who may make an objection
- 113 Temporary event notices: conditions
- 114 Temporary event notices: late notices
- 115 Relaxation of time limits applying to temporary event notices
- 116 Temporary event notices: acknowledgment of notice
- 117 Temporary event notice: time for objection by police

Underage sales

- 118 Persistently selling alcohol to children

Early morning alcohol restriction orders

- 119 Early morning alcohol restriction orders

Suspension for failure to pay annual fees

- 120 Suspension of licence or certificate for failing to pay annual fee

Miscellaneous

- 121 Licensing policy statements
122 Personal licences: relevant offences

Review

- 123 Review of effect of amendments on licensing scheme

CHAPTER 2

LATE NIGHT LEVY

Application of late night levy requirement in licensing authority's area

- 124 Late night levy requirement

Liability to pay late night levy

- 125 "Relevant late night authorisation" and related definitions
126 Liability to pay late night levy
127 Amount of late night levy

Administration of late night levy

- 128 Payment and administration of the levy
129 Net amount of levy payments

Application of levy payments

- 130 Application of net amount of levy payments

Late night levy requirement: further provision

- 131 Introduction of late night levy requirement
132 Amendment of late night levy requirement
133 Introduction or variation of late night levy requirement: procedure
134 Permitted exemption and reduction categories
135 Late night levy: regulations
136 Interpretation
137 Crown application
138 Amendments of the Licensing Act 2003

PART 3

PARLIAMENT SQUARE GARDEN AND SURROUNDING AREA

Repeal of SOCPA 2005 provisions

- 139 Demonstrations in vicinity of Parliament: repeal of SOCPA 2005 provisions

Controls on activities in Parliament Square Garden and adjoining pavements

- 140 Controlled area of Parliament Square
- 141 Prohibited activities in controlled area of Parliament Square
- 142 Directions under section 141: further provision
- 143 Power to seize property
- 144 Power of court on conviction
- 145 Authorisation for operation of amplified noise equipment
- 146 Meaning of “authorised officer” and “responsible authority”
- 147 Effect of Part on byelaws

PART 4

MISCELLANEOUS

Seizure powers under byelaws

- 148 Enforcement of byelaws: powers of seizure etc

Misuse of drugs

- 149 Temporary control of drugs
- 150 Advisory Council on the Misuse of Drugs

Arrest warrants

- 151 Restriction on issue of arrest warrants in private prosecutions

PART 5

FINAL PROVISIONS

- 152 Orders and regulations
- 153 Money
- 154 Extent
- 155 Commencement
- 156 Short title

-
- Schedule 1 – Police and crime commissioners
 - Schedule 2 – Chief constables
 - Schedule 3 – Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime
 - Schedule 4 – Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis
 - Schedule 5 – Issuing precepts
 - Schedule 6 – Police and crime panels
 - Schedule 7 – Regulations about complaints and conduct matters
 - Schedule 8 – Appointment, suspension and removal of senior police officers
 - Part 1 – Appointment of chief constables
 - Part 2 – Suspension and removal of chief constables
 - Part 3 – Suspension and removal of other senior police officers
 - Schedule 9 – Supplementary vote system

- Schedule 10 – Elections of police and crime commissioners: consequential amendments
- Schedule 11 – Crime and disorder strategies
- Schedule 12 – Collaboration agreements
- Schedule 13 – Police powers for civilian employees under collaboration agreements
- Schedule 14 – Transitional provision
 - Part 1 – Chief officers of police to remain in post
 - Part 2 – Transfer schemes
 - Part 3 – Other transitional provision
 - Part 4 – Interpretation
- Schedule 15 – Minor and consequential amendments in relation to Part 1
 - Part 1 – Police Act 1996
 - Part 2 – Greater London Authority Act 1999
 - Part 3 – Other enactments
- Schedule 16 – Temporary class drug orders

A
B I L L

TO

Make provision about the administration and governance of police forces; about the licensing of, and for the imposition of a late night levy in relation to, the sale and supply of alcohol; for the repeal of sections 132 to 138 of the Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 and for the prohibition of certain activities in Parliament Square; to enable provision in local authority byelaws to include powers of seizure and forfeiture; about the control of dangerous or otherwise harmful drugs; to restrict the issue of arrest warrants for certain extra-territorial offences; and for connected purposes.

BE IT ENACTED by the Queen’s most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

PART 1

POLICE REFORM

CHAPTER 1

POLICE AREAS OUTSIDE LONDON

Police and crime commissioners and chief constables

5

1 Police and crime commissioners

- (1) There is to be a police and crime commissioner for each police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas outside London).
- (2) A police and crime commissioner is a corporation sole.
- (3) The name of the police and crime commissioner for a police area is “the Police and Crime Commissioner for” with the addition of the name of the police area.
- (4) The police and crime commissioner for a police area is to be elected, and hold office, in accordance with Chapter 6.

10

-
- (5) A police and crime commissioner has –
- (a) the functions conferred by this section,
 - (b) the functions relating to community safety and crime prevention conferred by Chapter 3, and
 - (c) the other functions conferred by this Act and other enactments. 5
- (6) The police and crime commissioner for a police area must –
- (a) secure the maintenance of the police force for that area, and
 - (b) secure that the police force is efficient and effective.
- (7) The police and crime commissioner for a police area must hold the relevant chief constable to account for the exercise of – 10
- (a) the functions of the chief constable, and
 - (b) the functions of persons under the direction and control of the chief constable.
- (8) The police and crime commissioner must, in particular, hold the chief constable to account for – 15
- (a) the exercise of the duty under section 8(2) (duty to have regard to police and crime plan);
 - (b) the exercise of the duty under section 37A(2) of the Police Act 1996 (duty to have regard to strategic policing requirement);
 - (c) the exercise of the duty under section 39A(7) of the Police Act 1996 (duty to have regard to codes of practice issued by Secretary of State); 20
 - (d) the effectiveness and efficiency of the chief constable’s arrangements for co-operating with other persons in the exercise of the chief constable’s functions (whether under section 22A of the Police Act 1996 or otherwise); 25
 - (e) the effectiveness and efficiency of the chief constable’s arrangements under section 34 (engagement with local people);
 - (f) the extent to which the chief constable has complied with section 35 (value for money);
 - (g) the exercise of duties relating to equality and diversity that are imposed on the chief constable by any enactment. 30
- (9) The police authorities established for police areas under section 3 of the Police Act 1996 are abolished.
- (10) Schedule 1 (police and crime commissioners) has effect.
- 2 Chief constables** 35
- (1) Each police force is to have a chief constable.
- (2) The chief constable of a police force is to be appointed, and hold office, in accordance with –
- (a) section 38, and
 - (b) the terms and conditions of the appointment. 40
- (3) A police force, and the civilian staff of a police force, are under the direction and control of the chief constable of the force.
- (4) A chief constable has the other functions conferred by this Act and by other enactments.

- (5) A chief constable must exercise the power of direction and control conferred by subsection (3) in such a way as is reasonable to assist the relevant police and crime commissioner to exercise the commissioner’s functions.
- (6) Subsection (3) is subject to any provision included in a collaboration agreement (see section 22A of the Police Act 1996). 5
- (7) Schedule 2 (chief constables) has effect.
- (8) In this section “police force” means the police force for a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (see section 2 of that Act).

CHAPTER 2

METROPOLITAN POLICE DISTRICT 10

3 Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime

- (1) There is to be a body with the name “The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime” for the metropolitan police district.
- (2) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime is a corporation sole.
- (3) The person who is Mayor of London for the time being is to be the occupant for the time being of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime. 15
- (4) Accordingly, where a person is the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime by virtue of a particular term of office as Mayor of London (the “relevant mayoral term”), the person’s term as the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime – 20
 - (a) begins at the same time as the relevant mayoral term, and
 - (b) ends at the same time as the relevant mayoral term.
- (5) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime has – 25
 - (a) the functions conferred by this section,
 - (b) the functions relating to community safety and crime prevention conferred by Chapter 3, and
 - (c) the other functions conferred by this Act and other enactments.
- (6) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must – 30
 - (a) secure the maintenance of the metropolitan police force, and
 - (b) secure that the metropolitan police force is efficient and effective.
- (7) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must hold the Commissioner of Police for the Metropolis to account for the exercise of – 35
 - (a) the functions of the Commissioner, and
 - (b) the functions of persons under the direction and control of the Commissioner.
- (8) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must, in particular, hold the Commissioner to account for – 40
 - (a) the exercise of the duty imposed by section 8(4) (duty to have regard to police and crime plan);
 - (b) the exercise of the duty under section 37A(2) of the Police Act 1996 (duty to have regard to the strategic policing requirement);

-
- (c) the exercise of the duty imposed by section 39A(7) of the Police Act 1996 (duty to have regard to codes of practice issued by Secretary of State);
- (d) the effectiveness and efficiency of the Commissioner’s arrangements for co-operating with other persons in the exercise of the Commissioner’s functions (whether under section 22A of the Police Act 1996 or otherwise); 5
- (e) the effectiveness and efficiency of the Commissioner’s arrangements under section 34 (engagement with local people);
- (f) the extent to which the Commissioner has complied with section 35 (value for money); 10
- (g) the exercise of duties relating to equality and diversity imposed on the Commissioner by any enactment.
- (9) In section 424 of the Greater London Authority Act 1999 (interpretation), in subsection (1), in the definition of “functional body”, for paragraph (c) substitute— 15
“(c) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; or”.
- (10) In this section, references to the Mayor of London include references to a person who is, by virtue of Schedule 4 to the Greater London Authority Act 1999 (exercise of functions of Mayor during vacancy or incapacity), treated as if the person were the Mayor of London. 20
- (11) Where such a person is the occupant for the time being of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, references in this section to the relevant mayoral term are references to the period for which the person is treated as if the person were the Mayor of London. 25
- (12) The Metropolitan Police Authority is abolished.
- (13) Schedule 3 (Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime) has effect.
- 4 Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis**
- (1) There is to be a corporation sole with the name “the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis”. 30
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is to be appointed, and hold office, in accordance with—
(a) sections 42 and 48, and
(b) the terms and conditions of the appointment.
- (3) The metropolitan police force, and the civilian staff of the metropolitan police force, are under the direction and control of the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis. 35
- (4) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis has the other functions conferred by this Act and by other enactments.
- (5) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must exercise the power of direction and control conferred by subsection (3) in such a way as is reasonable to assist the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to exercise that Office’s functions. 40
- (6) Subsection (3) is subject to any provision included in a collaboration agreement (see section 22A of the Police Act 1996). 45

- (7) Schedule 4 (Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis) has effect.

CHAPTER 3

FUNCTIONS OF ELECTED LOCAL POLICING BODIES ETC

Community safety and crime prevention

- 5 Police and crime commissioners to issue police and crime plans** 5
- (1) The police and crime commissioner for a police area must issue a police and crime plan within the financial year in which each ordinary election is held.
- (2) A police and crime commissioner must comply with the duty under subsection (1) as soon as practicable after the commissioner takes office.
- (3) A police and crime commissioner may, at any time, issue a police and crime plan. 10
- (4) A police and crime commissioner may vary a police and crime plan.
- (5) In issuing or varying a police and crime plan, a police and crime commissioner must have regard to the strategic policing requirement issued by the Secretary of State under section 37A of the Police Act 1996. 15
- (6) Before issuing or varying a police and crime plan, a police and crime commissioner must—
- (a) prepare a draft of the plan or variation,
 - (b) consult the relevant chief constable in preparing the draft plan or variation, 20
 - (c) send the draft plan or variation to the relevant police and crime panel,
 - (d) have regard to any report or recommendations made by the panel in relation to the draft plan or variation (see section 28(2)),
 - (e) give the panel a response to any such report or recommendations, and
 - (f) publish any such response. 25
- (7) In complying with subsection (6)(c), the police and crime commissioner must ensure that the relevant police and crime panel has a reasonable amount of time to exercise its functions under section 28(2).
- (8) A police and crime commissioner may not issue, or vary, a police and crime plan unless the relevant chief constable agrees to the plan, or the variation. 30
- (9) A police and crime commissioner must—
- (a) keep the police and crime plan under review, and
 - (b) in particular, review the police and crime plan in the light of—
- (i) any report or recommendations made to the commissioner by the relevant police and crime panel under section 28(3), and 35
 - (ii) any changes in the strategic policing requirement issued by the Secretary of State under section 37A of the Police Act 1996;
- and exercise the powers under subsection (3) or (4) accordingly.
- (10) A police and crime commissioner who issues or varies a police and crime plan must— 40

- (a) send a copy of the issued plan, or the variation, to the relevant chief constable, and
 - (b) publish a copy of the issued plan, or the variation.
- (11) The duty under subsection (10) to send or publish a copy of the variation may instead be satisfied by sending or publishing a copy of the plan as varied. 5
- (12) It is for the commissioner to determine the manner in which—
- (a) a response to a report or recommendations is to be published in accordance with subsection (6)(f), and
 - (b) a copy of the plan is to be published in accordance with subsection (10)(b). 10
- (13) In this section—
- “financial year” means the financial year of the police and crime commissioner;
 - “ordinary election”, in relation to the police and crime commissioner for a police area, means an election held under section 50 in relation to that area. 15

6 Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to issue police and crime plans

- (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must issue a police and crime plan within the financial year in which each ordinary election is held.
- (2) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must comply with the duty under subsection (1) as soon as practicable after the person elected in the ordinary election takes office. 20
- (3) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may, at any time, issue a police and crime plan.
- (4) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may vary a police and crime plan. 25
- (5) In issuing or varying a police and crime plan, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must have regard to the strategic policing requirement issued by the Secretary of State under section 37A of the Police Act 1996.
- (6) Before issuing or varying a police and crime plan, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must— 30
- (a) prepare a draft of the plan or variation,
 - (b) consult the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis in preparing the draft plan or variation,
 - (c) send the draft plan or variation to the police and crime panel of the London Assembly (see section 32), and
 - (d) have regard to any report or recommendations made by the panel in relation to the draft plan or variation (see section 33(1)). 35
- (7) In complying with subsection (6)(c), the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must ensure that the police and crime panel has a reasonable amount of time to exercise its functions under section 33(1). 40
- (8) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may not issue, or vary, a police and crime plan unless the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis agrees to the plan, or the variation.
- (9) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must—

- (a) keep the police and crime plan under review, and
 - (b) in particular, review the police and crime plan in the light of any changes in the strategic policing requirement issued by the Secretary of State under section 37A of the Police Act 1996;and exercise the powers under subsection (3) or (4) accordingly. 5
- (10) The provisions of the 1999 Act set out in subsection (11) apply to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime and police and crime plans as the provisions apply to the Mayor of London and the relevant mayoral strategies.
- (11) Those provisions of the 1999 Act are –
 - (a) section 33(1)(b) and (c) (equality of opportunity); 10
 - (b) section 41(4)(b) and (c), (5), (6)(a) and (b), and (7) to (8A) (general duties in preparing and revising strategies);
 - (c) section 42(1) and (6) (consultation);
 - (d) section 42A (apart from subsection (2)) (consultation: supplementary provision); 15
 - (e) section 43 (publicity and availability of strategies);
 - (f) section 44 (directions by the Secretary of State).
- (12) Section 41(5)(b) of the 1999 Act has effect in relation to the Mayor of London as if the police and crime plan were a strategy listed in section 41(1) of the 1999 Act. 20
- (13) The Mayor of London and the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must co-operate with each other in exercising their respective functions under section 41(5)(b) of the 1999 Act.
- (14) In this section –
 - “1999 Act” means the Greater London Authority Act 1999; 25
 - “financial year” means the financial year of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 - “ordinary election” means an election of the Mayor of London held under section 3 of the 1999 Act;
 - “relevant mayoral strategy”, in relation to a provision set out in subsection (11), means a strategy to which the provision applies. 30

7 Police and crime plans

- (1) A police and crime plan is a plan which sets out, in relation to the planning period, the following matters –
 - (a) the elected local policing body’s police and crime objectives; 35
 - (b) the policing of the police area which the chief officer of police is to provide;
 - (c) the financial and other resources which the elected local policing body is to provide to the chief officer of police for the chief officer to exercise the functions of chief officer; 40
 - (d) the means by which the chief officer of police will report to the elected local policing body on the chief officer’s provision of policing;
 - (e) the means by which the chief officer of police’s performance in providing policing will be measured;
 - (f) the crime and disorder reduction grants which the elected local policing body is to make, and the conditions (if any) to which such grants are to be made. 45

-
- (2) The elected local policing body’s police and crime objectives are the body’s objectives for –
- (a) the policing of the body’s area,
 - (b) crime and disorder reduction in that area, and
 - (c) the discharge by the relevant police force of its national or international functions. 5
- (3) A police and crime plan has effect from the start of the planning period until –
- (a) the end of that planning period, or
 - (b) if another police and crime plan is issued in relation to the elected local policing body’s area before the end of that planning period, the day when that other plan first has effect. 10
- (4) The Secretary of State may give guidance to elected local policing bodies about the matters to be dealt with in police and crime plans.
- (5) An elected local policing body must have regard to such guidance.
- (6) Before giving guidance under subsection (4) the Secretary of State must consult – 15
- (a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners,
 - (b) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime,
 - (c) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of chief officers of police, and 20
 - (d) such other persons as the Secretary of State thinks fit.
- (7) In this section, in relation to a police and crime plan –
- “financial year” means the financial year of the elected local policing body; 25
- “ordinary election” –
- (a) in relation to a police and crime commissioner, has the meaning given in section 5;
 - (b) in relation to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, has the meaning given in section 6; 30
- “planning period”, in relation to a police and crime plan, is the period that –
- (a) begins with –
 - (i) the day on which the plan is issued, or
 - (i) if a qualifying day is specified in the plan as the day on which the plan is to begin to have effect, that day, and 35
 - (b) ends with the last day of the financial year in which the next ordinary election is expected to take place after the plan is issued;
- “qualifying day” means a day which meets the following conditions (so far as applicable) – 40
- (a) the day must fall after the day on which the plan is issued;
 - (b) the day must not fall after the day on which the next ordinary election is expected to take place after the plan is issued;
 - (c) in the case of a plan issued in accordance with the duty in section 5(1) or 6(1), the day must be, or fall before, the first day of the financial year following the financial year in which that duty must be complied with. 45

8 Duty to have regard to police and crime plan

- (1) A police and crime commissioner must, in exercising the functions of commissioner, have regard to the police and crime plan issued by the commissioner.
- (2) The chief constable of the police force for a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 must, in exercising the functions of chief constable, have regard to the police and crime plan issued by the police and crime commissioner for that police area. 5
- (3) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must, in exercising the functions of the Office, have regard to the police and crime plan issued by the Office. 10
- (4) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must, in exercising the functions of Commissioner, have regard to the police and crime plan issued by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (5) The Secretary of State may give guidance to a person subject to a duty under this section about how that duty is to be complied with. 15
- (6) A person given such guidance must have regard to the guidance.
- (7) Before giving guidance under subsection (5) the Secretary of State must consult—
 - (a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners, 20
 - (b) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime,
 - (c) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of chief officers of police, and
 - (d) such other persons as the Secretary of State thinks fit.

9 Crime and disorder reduction grants 25

- (1) The elected local policing body for a police area may make a crime and disorder reduction grant to any person.
- (2) A crime and disorder reduction grant is a grant which, in the opinion of the elected local policing body, will secure, or contribute to securing, crime and disorder reduction in the body’s area. 30
- (3) The elected local policing body may make a crime and disorder reduction grant subject to any conditions (including conditions as to repayment) which the body thinks appropriate.

10 Co-operative working

- (1) The elected local policing body for a police area, in exercising its functions, and a responsible authority, in exercising its functions conferred by or under section 6 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 in relation to that police area, must act in co-operation with each other. 35
- (2) The elected local policing body for a police area, and the criminal justice bodies which exercise functions as criminal justice bodies in that police area, must make arrangements (so far as it is appropriate to do so) for the exercise of functions so as to provide an efficient and effective criminal justice system in the police area. 40

- (3) The reference in subsection (1) to a responsible authority exercising functions in relation to a police area is a reference to the responsible authority exercising the functions in relation to a local government area that is comprised, or included, in the police area.
- (4) In this section – 5
“criminal justice body”, in relation to the elected local policing body for a police area, means –
- (a) the chief officer of police for that police area;
 - (b) the Crown Prosecution Service;
 - (c) the Lord Chancellor, in exercising functions under section 1 of the Courts Act 2003 (duty to ensure efficient and effective courts service); 10
 - (d) a Minister of the Crown, in exercising functions in relation to prisons (within the meaning of the Prisons Act 1952);
 - (e) a youth offending team established under section 39 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998; 15
 - (f) a person with whom the Secretary of State has made contractual or other arrangements, under section 3(2) of the Offender Management Act 2007, for the making of probation provision;
 - (g) the Secretary of State, in making probation provision in accordance with arrangements made by the Secretary of State under section 3(5) of the Offender Management Act 2007; 20
- “Minister of the Crown” has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975;
- “responsible authority” has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998. 25

Information, consultation etc

11 Information for public etc

- (1) An elected local policing body – 30
(a) must publish specified information; and
(b) if the time or manner of the publication of that information is specified, must publish it at that time or in that manner.
- (2) For that purpose, “specified” means specified by the Secretary of State by order.
- (3) An elected local policing body must publish the information which the body considers to be necessary to enable the persons who live in the body’s area to assess – 35
(a) the performance of the body in exercising the body’s functions, and
(b) the performance of the relevant chief officer of police in exercising the chief officer’s functions. 40
- (4) The information necessary to enable those persons to assess those matters by reference to a particular time, or a particular period, must be published by the elected local policing body as soon as practicable after that time or the end of that period.
- (5) An elected local policing body may provide (whether by publication or other means) information about – 45

- (a) the exercise of the body’s functions, and
- (b) the exercise of the functions of the relevant chief officer of police.

12 Annual reports

- (1) Each elected local policing body must produce a report (an “annual report”) on – 5
 - (a) the exercise of the body’s functions in each financial year, and
 - (b) the progress which has been made in the financial year in meeting the police and crime objectives in the body’s police and crime plan.
- (2) As soon as practicable after producing an annual report, the elected local policing body must send the report to the relevant police and crime panel. 10
- (3) The elected local policing body must attend before the panel at the public meeting arranged by the panel in accordance with section 28(3), to –
 - (a) present the report to the panel, and
 - (b) answer the panel’s questions on the report.
- (4) The elected local policing body must – 15
 - (a) give the panel a response to any report or recommendations on the annual report (see section 28(3)), and
 - (b) publish any such response.
- (5) It is for the police and crime panel to determine the manner in which a response to a report or recommendations is to be published in accordance with subsection (4)(b). 20
- (6) An elected local policing body must arrange for each annual report to be published.
- (7) It is for the elected local policing body to determine the manner in which an annual report is to be published. 25

13 Information for police and crime panels

- (1) An elected local policing body must provide the relevant police and crime panel with any information which the panel may reasonably require in order to carry out its functions.
- (2) But subsection (1) does not require the elected local policing body to provide information if disclosure of the information – 30
 - (a) would, in the view of the chief officer of police, be against the interests of national security,
 - (b) might, in the view of the chief officer of police, jeopardise the safety of any person, 35
 - (c) might, in the view of the chief officer of police, prejudice the prevention or detection of crime, the apprehension or prosecution of offenders, or the administration of justice, or
 - (d) is prohibited by or under any enactment.
- (3) An elected local policing body may provide the relevant police and crime panel with any other information which the body thinks appropriate. 40

14 Arrangements for obtaining the views of the community on policing

- (1) Section 96 of the Police Act 1996 (arrangements for obtaining the views of the community on policing) is amended in accordance with this section.
- (2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (b) insert “;
and for obtaining the views of victims of crime in that area about matters concerning the policing of the area.”. 5
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) Those arrangements must include, in the case of –
- (a) a police area listed in Schedule 1, or
- (b) the metropolitan police district, 10
- arrangements for obtaining, before a police and crime plan is issued under section 5 or 6 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011, the views of the people in that police area, and the views of the victims of crime in that area, on that plan.
- (1B) Those arrangements must include, in the case of a police area listed in Schedule 1, arrangements for obtaining, before the first precept for a financial year is issued by the police and crime commissioner under section 40 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992, the views of – 15
- (a) the people in that police area, and
- (b) the relevant ratepayers’ representatives, 20
- on the proposals of the police and crime commissioner for expenditure (including capital expenditure) in that financial year.
- (1C) Those arrangements must include, in the case of the metropolitan police district, arrangements for obtaining, before the first calculations in relation to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime are made for a financial year under section 85 of the Greater London Authority Act 1999, the views of – 25
- (a) the people in the metropolitan police district, and
- (b) the relevant ratepayers’ representatives, 30
- on the proposals of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime for expenditure (including capital expenditure) in that financial year.”.
- (4) For subsection (2) substitute –
- “(2) Arrangements under this section are to be made by the local policing body for the police area, after consulting the chief officer of police for that area.”. 35
- (5) Before subsection (6) insert –
- “(5A) In subsections (1B) and (1C) “relevant ratepayers’ representatives”, in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1, or the metropolitan police district, means the persons or bodies who appear to the elected local policing body for that area or district to be representative of persons subject to non-domestic rates under sections 43 and 45 of the Local Government Finance Act 1988 as regards hereditaments situated in that area or district. 40
- (5B) In determining which persons or bodies are relevant ratepayers’ representatives, an elected local policing body must have regard to any guidance given by the Secretary of State.” 45

- (6) Omit subsections (6) to (10).

Other provisions about functions

15 Supply of goods and services

- (1) Subsections (1), (2) and (3) of section 1 of the 1970 Act (supply of goods and services by local authorities) apply, with the modification set out in subsection (2), to each elected local policing body as they apply to a local authority. 5
- (2) In those subsections, references to a public body (within the meaning of that section) are to be read as references to any person.
- (3) An elected local policing body may not enter into an agreement with another elected local policing body, or with the Common Council in its capacity as a police authority, under section 1 of the 1970 Act in respect of a matter which could be the subject of force collaboration provision in a collaboration agreement under section 22A of the Police Act 1996. 10
- (4) In this section “1970 Act” means the Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970. 15

16 Appointment of persons not employed by elected local policing bodies

- (1) This section applies where an elected local policing body is required or authorised by any Act—
(a) to appoint a person to a specified post in the body, or
(b) to designate a person as having specified duties or responsibilities. 20
- (2) The elected local policing body may appoint or designate a person whether or not the person is already a member of staff of the body.
- (3) Subsection (2) has effect in spite of any provision to the contrary in the Act that is mentioned in subsection (1).

17 Duties when carrying out functions

- (1) In carrying out functions, an elected local policing body must have regard to the views of people in the body’s area about policing in that area. 25
- (2) In carrying out functions in a particular financial year, an elected local policing body must have regard to any report or recommendations made by the relevant police and crime panel on the annual report for the previous financial year (see section 28(3)). 30
- (3) Subsection (2) does not affect any exercise of the functions of the elected local policing body in any part of a particular financial year that falls—
(a) before the body has received a report or recommendations on the annual report for the previous financial year, or 35
(b) during the period after receipt of a report or recommendations when the body is considering the report or recommendations.
- (4) This section is in addition to the duty under section 8 to have regard to the police and crime plan.

18 Delegation of functions by police and crime commissioners

- (1) A police and crime commissioner may arrange for any person to exercise any function of the commissioner.
- (2) But a police and crime commissioner may not arrange –
- (a) for a person listed in subsection (3) to exercise any function; or 5
 - (b) for any person to exercise a function listed in subsection (4).
- (3) The persons referred to in subsection (2)(a) are –
- (a) a constable (whether or not in England and Wales);
 - (b) a police and crime commissioner;
 - (c) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 10
 - (d) the Mayor of London;
 - (e) the Common Council of the City of London;
 - (f) any other person or body which maintains a police force.
- (4) The functions referred to in subsection (2)(b) are –
- (a) issuing a police and crime plan (see section 5); 15
 - (b) determining police and crime objectives (see section 7);
 - (c) attendance at a meeting of a police and crime panel in compliance with a requirement by the panel to do so (see section 29);
 - (d) preparing an annual report to a policing and crime panel (see section 12); 20
 - (e) appointing the chief constable, suspending the chief constable, or calling upon the chief constable to retire or resign (see section 38);
 - (f) calculating a budget requirement (see section 43 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992).
- (5) If a function of a police and crime commissioner is exercisable by any other person in accordance with this section, any property or rights vested in the commissioner may be dealt with by the other person in exercising the function, as if vested in that person. 25

19 Delegation of functions by Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime

- (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may – 30
- (a) appoint a person as the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime, and
 - (b) arrange for the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime to exercise any function of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (2) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may arrange for a person (who is not the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime) to exercise any function of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime. 35
- (3) But the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may not –
- (a) appoint a person listed in subsection (6) as the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime;
 - (b) arrange for the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime to exercise a function listed in subsection (7); 40
 - (c) arrange, under subsection (2), for a person listed in subsection (6) to exercise any function; or
 - (d) arrange, under subsection (2), for a person to exercise a function listed in subsection (7). 45

- (4) The Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime may arrange for any other person to exercise any function of that Office which is, in accordance with subsection (3)(d), exercisable by the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime.
- (5) But the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime may not arrange for a person listed in subsection (6) to exercise any such function. 5
- (6) The persons referred to in subsections (3)(a) and (c) and (5) are –
 - (a) a constable (whether or not in England and Wales);
 - (b) a police and crime commissioner;
 - (c) the Mayor of London;
 - (d) the Common Council of the City of London; 10
 - (e) any other person or body which maintains a police force.
- (7) The functions mentioned in subsection (3)(d) are –
 - (a) issuing a police and crime plan (see section 6);
 - (b) determining police and crime objectives (see section 7);
 - (c) attendance at a meeting of the police and crime panel of the London Assembly in compliance with a requirement by the panel to do so (see section 29); 15
 - (d) preparing an annual report to the policing and crime panel of the London Assembly (see section 12);
 - (e) making recommendations in relation to the appointment of a Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis under section 42; 20
 - (f) making representations in relation to the appointment of a Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis under section 45;
 - (g) being consulted in relation to the appointment or removal of an Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, a Deputy Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, or a Commander (see sections 45, 46, 47 and 49); 25
 - (h) suspending the Commissioner, or Deputy Commissioner, of Police of the Metropolis, or calling upon the Commissioner, or Deputy Commissioner, to retire or resign (see section 48). 30
- (8) If a function of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime is exercisable by a person in accordance with subsection (1), (2) or (4), any property or rights vested in the Office may be dealt with by the other person in exercising the function, as if vested in that person.
- (9) Subsection (2) applies whether or not there is a Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime. 35
- (10) The Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime is a member of the staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (11) But that is subject to paragraph 4(4) of Schedule 3 (Deputy Mayor an Assembly member). 40
- (12) The appointment of the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime is subject to Schedule 4A to the Greater London Authority Act 1999.
- (13) For further provision about the appointment of the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime, see paragraph 4 of Schedule 3.

20 Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime: confirmation hearings

- (1) The Greater London Authority Act 1999 is amended in accordance with this section.
- (2) In section 60A (confirmation hearings etc for certain appointments by the Mayor)–
- (a) in the title, at the end insert “**or Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime**”;
- (b) in subsection (3), omit the entry relating to the chairman and vice chairman of the Metropolitan Police Authority;
- (c) for subsection (4) substitute –
- “(4) This section also applies in any case where the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime proposes to make an appointment, under section 19 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011, of a person to be the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime.”.
- (3) In Schedule 4A (confirmation hearings etc), in paragraph 1 (application of Schedule), after sub-paragraph (2) insert –
- “(3) This Schedule also has effect where the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime proposes to make an appointment, under section 19 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011, of a person to be the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime.
- (4) In the application of this Schedule in relation to such an appointment, references to the Mayor are to be read as references to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (5) Paragraph 9 does not apply in relation to such an appointment (but see section 32 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011).”.

Financial matters

21 Police fund

- (1) Each elected local policing body must keep a fund to be known as the police fund. 30
- (2) All of an elected local policing body’s receipts must be paid into the relevant police fund.
- (3) All of an elected local policing body’s expenditure must be paid out of the relevant police fund. 35
- (4) An elected local policing body must keep accounts of payments made into or out of the relevant police fund.
- (5) Subsections (2) and (3) are subject to any regulations under the Police Pensions Act 1976.
- (6) In this section “relevant police fund”, in relation to an elected local policing body, means the police fund which that body keeps. 40

22 Minimum budget for police and crime commissioner

- (1) Section 41 of the Police Act 1996 (directions as to minimum budget) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) –
 - (a) for “a police authority established under section 3” substitute “a police and crime commissioner”; 5
 - (b) for “the authority” substitute “the commissioner”;
 - (c) for “its budget requirement” substitute “the commissioner’s budget requirement”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert – 10
“(1A) But the Secretary of State may not give a direction to the police and crime commissioner for a police area by virtue of subsection (1) unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is necessary to give the direction in order to prevent the safety of people in that police area from being put at risk.”. 15
- (4) In subsection (4) –
 - (a) for “a police authority” substitute “a police and crime commissioner”;
 - (b) for “the authority” substitute “the commissioner”.

23 Minimum budget for Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime

- (1) The Greater London Authority Act 1999 is amended as follows. 20
- (2) Section 95 (minimum budget for Metropolitan Police Authority) is amended in accordance with subsections (3) to (7).
- (3) In the title, for “**Metropolitan Police Authority**” substitute “**Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime**”.
- (4) In subsection (1), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”; 25
- (5) In subsection (2), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.
- (6) After subsection (2) insert –
“(2A) But the Secretary of State may not give a direction to the Authority by virtue of subsection (2) unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is necessary to give the direction in order to prevent the safety of people in the metropolitan police district from being put at risk.”. 30
- (7) In subsections (3), (4) and (7), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” (in each place) substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”. 35
- (8) In section 96 (provisions supplemental to section 95), in subsection (6), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.

24 Police grant

- (1) Section 46 of the Police Act 1996 (police grant) is amended as follows. 40
- (2) In subsection (1) –

- (a) *for paragraph (a) substitute –*
 “(a) *police and crime commissioners, and*”;
- (b) *in the words after paragraph (b), for “police authorities” substitute “police and crime commissioners”.*
- (3) *In subsection (2)(b), for “authority” substitute “commissioner”.* 5
- (4) *In subsection (4), for “police authorities” substitute “commissioners”.*
- (5) *In subsection (5), for “different authorities or different classes of authority” substitute “different commissioners or different classes of commissioner”.*
- (6) *In subsection (7), for “police authority” substitute “police and crime commissioner”.*
- (7) *In subsection (7A) –* 10
 (a) *for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”;*
 (b) *for “that Authority” substitute “that Office”.*
- (8) *In subsection (8) –* 15
 (a) *for “an authority’s” substitute “a commissioner’s”;*
 (b) *for “the authority” substitute “the commissioner”;*
 (c) *for “an authority” substitute “a commissioner”.*
- (9) *In subsection (9), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.*
- 25 Other grants etc under Police Act 1996** 20
- (1) *The Police Act 1996 is amended as follows.*
- (2) *In section 47 (grants for capital expenditure) –*
 (a) *for subsection (1)(a) and (b) substitute –*
 “(a) *police and crime commissioners, and*
 (b) *the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.”;* 25
 (b) *in subsection (5) –*
 (i) *for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”;*
 (ii) *for “that Authority” substitute “that Office”.*
- (3) *In section 48 (grants for expenditure on safeguarding national security) –* 30
 (a) *for subsection (1)(a) and (b) substitute –*
 “(a) *police and crime commissioners, and*
 (b) *the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime,*
 in connection with safeguarding national security.”;
 (b) *in subsection (5) –* 35
 (i) *for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”;*
 (ii) *for “that Authority” substitute “that Office”.*
- (4) *In section 92 (grants by local authorities) –*
 (a) *in subsection (1), for “police authority established under section 3” substitute “police and crime commissioner”;* 40
 (b) *in subsection (2), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.*

- (5) In section 93 (acceptance of gifts or loans) –
 - (a) in subsection (1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) in subsection (2) –
 - (i) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”; and
 - (ii) for “maintained by it” substitute “for which it is responsible”. 5
 - (6) Section 94 (financing of new police authorities) is amended as follows.
 - (7) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**police and crime commissioners**”.
 - (8) In subsection (1) –
 - (a) for “police authority established under section 3” substitute “police and crime commissioner”; 10
 - (b) for “it” substitute “the commissioner”.
 - (9) In subsection (2) –
 - (a) for “police authority established under section 3” substitute “police and crime commissioner”; 15
 - (b) for “it” substitute “the commissioner”;
 - (c) for “its” (in both places) substitute “the commissioner’s”.
 - (10) In subsection (3) –
 - (a) for “an authority” substitute “a commissioner”;
 - (b) for “its” substitute “the commissioner’s”. 20
 - (11) In subsection (4) –
 - (a) for “a police authority” substitute “a police and crime commissioner”;
 - (b) for “it” (in both places) substitute “the commissioner”.
- 26 Precepts**
- (1) The Local Government Finance Act 1992 is amended in accordance with subsections (2) and (3). 25
 - (2) In section 39 (precepting and precepted authorities), in subsection (1) (major precepting authorities), for paragraph (b) substitute –
“(b) a police and crime commissioner;”.
 - (3) In section 65 (duty to consult ratepayers), in subsection (3) (definition of relevant authority), after “major precepting authority” insert “, apart from a police and crime commissioner”. 30
 - (4) Schedule 5 (issuing precepts) has effect.
- 27 Other grants etc**
- (1) Section 155 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (emergency financial assistance to local authorities) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) and (3). 35
 - (2) In subsection (1A) (grants to GLA functional bodies), for paragraph (b) substitute –
“(b) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, or”.
 - (3) In subsection (4) (meaning of local authority), for paragraph (ea) substitute –
“(ea) a police and crime commissioner;”. 40

- (4) *In section 33 of the Local Government Act 2003 (interpretation of Chapter 1 of Part 3: expenditure grant), in subsection (1) (meaning of local authority), for paragraph (m) substitute –*
 “(m) *a police and crime commissioner.*”.

CHAPTER 4

5

ACCOUNTABILITY OF ELECTED LOCAL POLICING BODIES

Scrutiny of police and crime commissioners

28 Police and crime panels of local authorities

- (1) The local authority, or local authorities, covered by a police area must establish a police and crime panel for that police area. 10
- (2) A police and crime panel must –
- (a) review the draft police and crime plan, or draft variations, given to the panel by the relevant police and crime commissioner in accordance with section 5(6)(c), and
 - (b) make a report or recommendations on the draft plan or variations to the commissioner. 15
- (3) A police and crime panel must –
- (a) arrange for a public meeting of the panel to be held as soon as practicable after the panel is sent an annual report under section 12,
 - (b) ask the elected local policing body, at that meeting, such questions about the annual report as the members of the panel think appropriate, 20
 - (c) review the annual report, and
 - (d) make a report or recommendations on the annual report to the commissioner.
- (4) A police and crime panel has the functions conferred by Schedules 5 (issuing precepts) and 8 (procedure for appointments by police and crime commissioners). 25
- (5) A police and crime panel must –
- (a) review or scrutinise decisions made, or other action taken, by the relevant police and crime commissioner in connection with the discharge of the commissioner’s functions; and 30
 - (b) make reports or recommendations to the relevant police and crime commissioner with respect to the discharge of the commissioner’s functions,
- insofar as the panel is not otherwise required to do so by subsections (2) or (3) or by Schedule 5 or 8. 35
- (6) A police and crime panel must –
- (a) publish any reports or recommendations made to the relevant police and crime commissioner, and
 - (b) send copies of any such reports or recommendations made under any of subsections (2) to (4) to the local authority or local authorities covered by the relevant police area. 40

- (7) It is for the police and crime panel to determine the manner in which reports or recommendations are to be published in accordance with subsection (6)(a).
- (8) Schedule 6 (police and crime panels) has effect.
- (9) A reference in this section to a local authority covered by a police area is a reference to a local authority whose area falls wholly or partly within the police area. 5
- (10) In this section –
 - “local authority” means –
 - (a) in relation to England, a county council or a district council;
 - (b) in relation to Wales, a county council or a county borough council; 10
 - “police area” means a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas outside London).

29 Power to require attendance and information

- (1) A police and crime panel may require the relevant police and crime commissioner, and members of that commissioner’s staff, to attend before the panel (at reasonable notice) to answer any question which appears to the panel to be necessary in order for it to carry out its functions. 15
- (2) A police and crime panel may require the relevant police and crime commissioner to respond in writing (within a reasonable period determined by the panel) to any report or recommendation made by the panel to the commissioner. 20
- (3) The police and crime commissioner must comply with any requirement imposed by the panel under subsection (1) or (2).
- (4) Members of the staff of the police and crime commissioner must comply with any requirement imposed on them under subsection (1). 25

30 Suspension of police and crime commissioner

- (1) A police and crime panel may suspend the relevant police and crime commissioner if it appears to the panel that –
 - (a) the commissioner has been charged in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man with an offence, and 30
 - (b) the offence is one which carries a maximum term of imprisonment exceeding two years.
- (2) The suspension of the police and crime commissioner ceases to have effect upon the occurrence of the earliest of these events –
 - (a) the charge being dropped;
 - (b) the police and crime commissioner being acquitted of the offence;
 - (c) the police and crime commissioner being convicted of the offence but not being disqualified under section 67 by virtue of the conviction;
 - (d) the termination of the suspension by the police and crime panel. 40
- (3) For the purposes of salary, pensions and allowances in respect of times during a period of suspension, the police and crime commissioner is to be treated as not holding that office during that suspension.

- (4) In this section references to an offence which carries a maximum term of imprisonment of two years or more are references –
- (a) to an offence which carries such a maximum term in the case of a person who has attained the age of 18 years, or
 - (b) to an offence for which, in the case of such a person, the sentence is fixed by law as life imprisonment. 5

Conduct of police and crime commissioners

31 Conduct of commissioners

- (1) The Secretary of State may, by regulations, make provision about –
- (a) the making and handling of complaints about the conduct of police and crime commissioners (“qualifying complaints”); 10
 - (b) the recording of matters in the case of which there is an indication (whether from the circumstances or otherwise) that a police and crime commissioner may have committed a criminal offence or engaged in other corrupt behaviour (“conduct matters”); 15
 - (c) the manner in which qualifying complaints and conduct matters are investigated or otherwise dealt with.
- (2) Schedule 7 (regulations about complaints and conduct matters) has effect.

Scrutiny of Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime

32 London Assembly police and crime panel 20

- (1) The London Assembly must arrange for the functions referred to in subsection (2) to be discharged on its behalf by a particular committee of the Assembly (the “police and crime panel”).
- (2) Those functions (“the police and crime panel functions”) are –
- (a) the functions conferred on the Assembly by section 33; 25
 - (b) the functions conferred on the Assembly by section 60A of, and Schedule 4A to, the 1999 Act in relation to the appointment of the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (3) The London Assembly may not arrange for the police and crime panel functions to be discharged on its behalf otherwise than in accordance with subsection (1). 30
- (4) The London Assembly may not arrange for any of its other functions to be discharged by the police and crime panel.
- (5) The special scrutiny functions may only be exercised at a meeting of the whole panel; but that is without prejudice to rules of procedure about the quorum of a meeting of the whole panel. 35
- (6) The enactments applying to committees of the Greater London Authority, apart from the excluded provisions, apply to the police and crime panel as if the police and crime panel functions were to be discharged by the panel by virtue of arrangements under section 54(1)(a) of the 1999 Act. 40

- (7) In subsection (6), “excluded provisions” means the following provisions of the 1999 Act –
- (a) section 54(5), so far as it provides for the London Assembly to retain power to exercise functions delegated to a committee;
 - (b) section 55 (Assembly committees and sub-committees). 5
- (8) The enactments conferring, or relating to, the police and crime panel functions are to be read with the appropriate modifications; in particular –
- (a) references to the London Assembly are to be read as references to the police and crime panel; and
 - (b) references to proceedings of the London Assembly are to be read as references to proceedings of the police and crime panel. 10
- (9) For the purposes of subsection (8), references to the police and crime panel include references to a sub-committee or member (if any) by whom functions are to be discharged in accordance with section 54(3) of the 1999 Act.
- (10) In this section – 15
- “1999 Act” means the Greater London Authority Act 1999;
 - “special scrutiny functions” means the functions conferred –
- (a) by section 33(1), or
 - (b) by section 60A of, and Schedule 4A to, the 1999 Act in relation to the appointment of the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime. 20

33 Functions to be discharged by police and crime panel

- (1) The London Assembly must –
- (a) review the draft police and crime plan, or draft variations, given to the Assembly by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime in accordance with section 6(6)(c), and 25
 - (b) make a report or recommendations on the draft plan or variations to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (2) The London Assembly must keep under review the exercise of the functions of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, insofar as the Assembly is not otherwise required to do so by the other provisions of this section or by Schedule 4A to the 1999 Act. 30
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), the powers of the London Assembly include, in particular, power to investigate, and prepare reports about –
- (a) any actions and decisions of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 35
 - (b) any actions and decisions of the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime;
 - (c) any actions and decisions of a member of staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 - (d) matters relating to the functions of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 40
 - (e) matters in relation to which the functions of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime are exercisable; or
 - (f) any other matters which the Assembly considers to be of importance to policing and crime reduction in the metropolitan police district.
- (4) The London Assembly may submit proposals to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime. 45

-
- (5) The London Assembly may require a person referred to in subsection (6) –
- (a) to attend proceedings of the Assembly for the purpose of giving evidence, or
 - (b) to produce to the Assembly documents in the person’s possession or under the person’s control. 5
- (6) Those persons are –
- (a) the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime;
 - (b) any member of the staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 - (c) the person who is the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 10
 - (d) any person who has within the 8 years prior to the date of the requirement to be imposed under subsection (5) been the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime or the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
- (7) Nothing in subsection (5) requires a member of the staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to give any evidence, or produce any document, which discloses advice given to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime by that person. 15
- (8) The following provisions of the 1999 Act apply (with appropriate modifications) to a requirement under subsection (5) as they apply to a requirement under section 61(1) of the 1999 Act – 20
- (a) section 61(14) (meaning of document etc);
 - (b) section 62(3) to (6) (procedure for requiring attendance);
 - (c) section 63 (restriction of information);
 - (d) section 64 (failure to attend proceedings); 25
 - (e) section 65 (openness).
- (9) In this section “1999 Act” means the Greater London Authority Act 1999.

CHAPTER 5

POLICE FORCES IN AREAS WITH ELECTED LOCAL POLICING BODIES

Chief officers of police 30

34 Engagement with local people

- (1) A chief officer of police must make arrangements for obtaining the views of persons within each neighbourhood in the relevant police area about crime and disorder in that neighbourhood.
- (2) A chief officer of police must make arrangements for providing persons within each neighbourhood in the relevant police area with information about policing in that neighbourhood (including information about how policing in that neighbourhood is aimed at dealing with crime and disorder there). 35
- (3) Arrangements under this section must provide for, or include arrangements for, the holding in each neighbourhood of regular meetings between – 40
- (a) persons within that neighbourhood, and
 - (b) police officers with responsibility for supervising or carrying out policing in that neighbourhood.

- (4) It is for a chief officer of police to determine what the neighbourhoods are in the relevant police area.

35 Value for money

- (1) In exercising functions, a chief officer of police must secure that good value for money is obtained. 5
- (2) That includes securing that the persons under the direction and control of the chief officer of police obtain good value for money in exercising their functions.

36 Reports for elected local policing bodies

- (1) A chief officer of police must give the relevant elected local policing body such reports on policing matters that the body may require the chief officer to give. 10
- (2) A report must be in the form (if any) specified by the elected local policing body.
- (3) The elected local policing body may –
- (a) arrange for a report to be published, or
 - (b) require the chief officer of police to arrange for a report to be published. 15
- (4) It is for the elected local policing body to determine the manner in which a report is to be published in accordance with subsection (3)(a) or (b).
- (5) In this section “policing matters” means matters connected with the policing of the relevant police area.

37 Appointment of persons not employed by chief officers of police 20

- (1) This section applies where a chief officer of police is required or authorised by any Act –
- (a) to appoint a person to a specified post in the relevant police force, or a specified post in the civilian staff of the relevant police force, or
 - (b) to designate a person as having specified duties or responsibilities. 25
- (2) The chief officer of police may appoint or designate a person whether or not the person is already a member of staff of the police force.
- (3) Subsection (2) has effect in spite of any provision to the contrary in the Act that is mentioned in subsection (1).

Police forces outside London 30

38 Appointment, suspension and removal of chief constables

- (1) The police and crime commissioner for a police area is to appoint the chief constable of the police force for that area.
- (2) The police and crime commissioner for a police area may suspend from duty the chief constable of the police force for that area. 35
- (3) The police and crime commissioner for a police area may call upon the chief constable of the police force for that area to resign or retire.

-
- (4) The chief constable must retire or resign if called upon to do so by the relevant police and crime commissioner in accordance with subsection (3).
 - (5) Schedule 8 (appointment, suspension and removal of senior police officers) has effect.
 - (6) This section is subject to Parts 1 and 2 of Schedule 8. 5
 - (7) This section and Schedule 8 are subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.

39 Deputy chief constables

- (1) Each police force must have one or more deputy chief constables.
- (2) The chief constable of a police force must consult the relevant police and crime commissioner before increasing the number of deputy chief constables which the force has. 10
- (3) The chief constable of a police force must consult the relevant police and crime commissioner before appointing a person to be a deputy chief constable of the force. 15
- (4) The chief constable of a police force may suspend from duty a deputy chief constable of that police force.
- (5) The chief constable of a police force may call upon a deputy chief constable of that police force to resign or retire.
- (6) A deputy chief constable must resign or retire if called upon to do so by the chief constable in accordance with subsection (5). 20
- (7) Subsections (3) to (6) are subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.
- (8) Subsections (4) to (6) are subject to Part 3 of Schedule 8 (suspension and removal of other senior police officers). 25
- (9) In this section “police force” means the police force for a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas outside London).

40 Assistant chief constables

- (1) Each police force must have one or more assistant chief constables.
- (2) The chief constable of a police force must consult the relevant police and crime commissioner before appointing a person as an assistant chief constable of the force. 30
- (3) The chief constable of a police force may suspend from duty an assistant chief constable of that police force.
- (4) The chief constable of a police force may call upon an assistant chief constable of that police force to resign or retire. 35
- (5) An assistant chief constable must resign or retire if called upon to do so by the chief constable in accordance with subsection (4).
- (6) Subsections (2) to (5) are subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996. 40

- (7) Subsections (3) to (5) are subject to Part 3 of Schedule 8 (suspension and removal of other senior police officers).
- (8) In this section “police force” means the police force for a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas outside London).

41	Power of deputy to exercise functions of chief constable	5
(1)	The appropriate deputy chief constable of a police force may exercise or perform any or all of the functions of the chief constable of the force—	
	(a) during any period when the chief constable is unable to exercise functions, or	
	(b) at any other time, with the consent of the chief constable.	10
(2)	For the purposes of subsection (1), the appropriate deputy chief constable is—	
	(a) if the police force has only one deputy chief constable, the deputy chief constable;	
	(b) if the police force has more than one deputy chief constable, the most senior deputy chief constable.	15
(3)	If the police force has more than one deputy chief constable, the chief constable must designate the deputy chief constables in order of seniority for the purposes of subsection (2)(b).	
(4)	During any absence, incapacity or suspension from duty of the person who—	
	(a) is designated as the most senior deputy chief constable for the purposes of subsection (2)(b), or	20
	(b) is treated under this section as the most senior deputy chief constable, the person designated as the next most senior deputy chief constable is to be treated as the most senior one for the purposes of subsection (2)(b).	
(5)	The assistant chief constable designated for this purpose by the chief constable of the force may exercise any or all of the chief constable’s functions during any period when—	25
	(a) the chief constable is unable to exercise functions, and	
	(b) a deputy chief constable is unable to exercise functions.	
(6)	The chief constable of the force must designate an assistant chief constable of the force for the purposes of subsection (5).	30
(7)	Only one person is authorised to act at any one time by virtue of a designation by the chief constable.	
(8)	The chief constable must consult the relevant police and crime commissioner before making a designation for the purposes of subsection (2)(b) or (5).	35
(9)	This section is without prejudice to any other enactment that makes provision for a person other than the chief constable to exercise the chief constable’s functions.	
(10)	In this section—	
	(a) “police force” means the police force for a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas outside London);	40
	(b) a reference to a period when the chief constable is unable to exercise functions is a reference to a period when—	

-
- (i) the chief constable is absent, incapacitated or suspended from duty, or
 - (ii) the office of chief constable is vacant;
 - (c) a reference to a period when a deputy chief constable is unable to exercise functions is a reference to a period when – 5
 - (i) the deputy chief constable, or each of the deputy chief constables, is absent, incapacitated or suspended from duty, or
 - (ii) the office of deputy chief constable, or of each deputy chief constable, is vacant.
- The metropolitan police force* 10
- 42 Appointment of Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis**
- (1) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is to be appointed by Her Majesty by warrant under Her sign manual.
 - (2) A constable holds office as the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis at Her Majesty’s pleasure. 15
 - (3) Before recommending to Her Majesty that She appoint a constable as the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, the Secretary of State must have regard to any recommendations made by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.
 - (4) The appointment of the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996. 20
- 43 Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis**
- (1) The Metropolitan Police force has one Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis.
 - (2) The Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is to be appointed by Her Majesty by warrant under Her sign manual. 25
 - (3) A person holds office as the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis at Her Majesty’s pleasure.
 - (4) Before recommending to Her Majesty that She appoint a person as the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, the Secretary of State must have regard to – 30
 - (a) any recommendations made by the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, and
 - (b) any representations made by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime. 35
 - (5) The appointment of the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.
- 44 Functions of Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis**
- (1) The Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may exercise any or all of the powers and duties of the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis – 40

-
- (a) during any absence, incapacity or suspension from duty of the Commissioner,
- (b) during any vacancy in the office of Commissioner, or
- (c) at any other time, with the consent of the Commissioner.
- (2) The Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis does not have power to act by virtue of subsection (1)(a) or (b) for a continuous period exceeding three months, except with the consent of the Secretary of State. 5
- (3) The Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis has all the powers and duties of an Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis.
- 45 Assistant Commissioners of Police of the Metropolis 10**
- (1) The metropolitan police force must have one or more Assistant Commissioners of Police of the Metropolis.
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must consult the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime before appointing a person as an Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis. 15
- (3) The appointment of a person as an Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.
- (4) An Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may exercise any of the powers and duties of the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis with the consent of the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis. 20
- (5) Subsection (4) is without prejudice to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.
- 46 Deputy Assistant Commissioners of Police for the Metropolis**
- (1) The metropolitan police force must have one or more Deputy Assistant Commissioners of Police of the Metropolis. 25
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must consult the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime before appointing a person as a Deputy Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis.
- (3) The appointment of a person as a Deputy Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996. 30
- 47 Commanders**
- (1) The metropolitan police force must have one or more Commanders.
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must consult the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime before appointing a person as a Commander.
- (3) The appointment of a person as a Commander is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996. 35
- 48 Suspension and removal of Commissioner and Deputy Commissioner**
- (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may, with the approval of the Secretary of State –

-
- (a) suspend the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis from duty, or
 (b) suspend the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis from duty.
- (2) If the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime suspends the Commissioner, or Deputy Commissioner, from duty, that Office must notify the Secretary of State of the suspension. 5
- (3) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may, subject to subsections (5) and (6), and with the approval of the Secretary of State –
 (a) call upon the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis to resign or retire, or
 (b) call upon the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis to resign or retire. 10
- (4) The Commissioner, or Deputy Commissioner, must resign or retire if called upon to do so in accordance with subsection (3).
- (5) Before calling upon the Commissioner, or Deputy Commissioner, to retire or resign, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must – 15
 (a) give the police officer a written explanation of the reasons why the Office is proposing to call for the retirement or resignation;
 (b) give the police officer the opportunity to make written representations about the proposal to call for the police officer’s resignation or retirement; and
 (c) consider any written representations made by the police officer. 20
- (6) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must comply with subsection (5) before seeking the approval of the Secretary of State to call upon the Commissioner, or Deputy Commissioner, to retire or resign. 25
- (7) This section is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.
- (8) This section is without prejudice to –
 (a) section 42(2);
 (b) section 43(3); or
 (c) regulations under the Police Pensions Act 1976. 30
- 49 Suspension and removal of other senior metropolitan police officers**
- (1) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may suspend a senior metropolitan police officer from duty.
- (2) If the Commissioner suspends a senior metropolitan police officer from duty, the Commissioner must notify the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime of the suspension. 35
- (3) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may, subject to subsection (5), and after consulting the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, call upon a senior metropolitan police officer to resign or retire.
- (4) A senior metropolitan police officer must resign or retire if called upon to do so in accordance with subsection (3). 40
- (5) Before calling upon a senior metropolitan police officer to retire or resign, the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must –

- (a) give the police officer a written explanation of the reasons why the Commissioner is proposing to call for the retirement or resignation;
 - (b) give the police officer the opportunity to make written representations about the proposal to call for the police officer’s resignation or retirement; and
 - (c) consider any written representations made by the police officer.
- (6) This section is subject to regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996.
- (7) This section is without prejudice to regulations under the Police Pensions Act 1976.
- (8) In this section “senior metropolitan police officer” means any of the following –
- (a) an Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;
 - (b) a Deputy Assistant Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;
 - (c) a Commander.

CHAPTER 6

POLICE AND CRIME COMMISSIONERS: ELECTIONS AND VACANCIES

Holding of elections

50 Ordinary elections

- (1) An election of police and crime commissioners for all police areas (an “ordinary election”) is to be held –
- (a) in 2012;
 - (b) in each subsequent fourth year.
- (2) The poll at an ordinary election of police and crime commissioners in any year is to be held –
- (a) in England, on the day which is the ordinary day of election in that year of councillors for counties in England and districts (see sections 37 and 37A of the Representation of the People Act 1983), and
 - (b) in Wales, on the day which is the ordinary day of election in that year of councillors for counties in Wales and county boroughs (see sections 37 and 37B of that Act).
- (3) The term of office of a person elected as a police and crime commissioner at an ordinary election –
- (a) begins with the seventh day after the day of the poll at the election, and
 - (b) ends with the sixth day after the day of the poll at the next ordinary election of police and crime commissioners.
- (4) Subsection (3) is subject to any provision of or made under this or any other Act relating to the appointment or election of police and crime commissioners or their ceasing to hold office.

51 Election to fill vacancy in office of commissioner

- (1) This section applies where a vacancy occurs in the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area.

-
- (2) An election must be held to fill the vacancy.
- (3) The police area returning officer must fix the date of the poll at the election.
- (4) The date fixed must be not more than 35 days after the relevant event (computed in accordance with section 75).
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4), “the relevant event” means – 5
- (a) in a case where the High Court or the appropriate officer has declared the office to be vacant, the making of that declaration;
 - (b) in any other case, the giving of notice of the vacancy to the appropriate officer by two or more relevant electors.
- (6) For this purpose “relevant elector” means a person who is registered in a register of local government electors in respect of an address within the police area. 10
- (7) If the vacancy occurs within the period of six months ending with the day of the poll at the next ordinary election of police and crime commissioners – 15
- (a) no election is to be held under subsection (2) in respect of the vacancy, and
 - (b) accordingly, the office is to be left unfilled until that ordinary election.
- (8) The term of office of a person elected as a police and crime commissioner for a police area at an election to fill a vacancy in the office – 20
- (a) begins immediately the person is declared to be elected as police and crime commissioner for the area;
 - (b) ends at the time when it would have ended had the person been elected at the most recent ordinary election of police and crime commissioners.
- (9) In the case of a vacancy occurring in consequence of the failure of, or other irregularity in relation to, an election, subsections (3) and (4) have effect subject to any provision made by an order under section 58. 25

52 Persons entitled to vote

- (1) A person is entitled to vote as an elector at an election of a police and crime commissioner for a police area if on the date of the poll – 30
- (a) the person would be entitled to vote as an elector at a local government election in an electoral area wholly or partly comprised in the police area, and
 - (b) the address in respect of which the person is registered in the register of local government electors for that electoral area is within the police area. 35
- (2) A person is not entitled to vote as an elector more than once in the same police area at any election of a police and crime commissioner.

53 Public awareness about elections: role of Electoral Commission

- The Electoral Commission must, in relation to – 40
- (a) each ordinary election of police and crime commissioners under section 50,
 - (b) each election to fill a vacancy in the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area under section 51,

take such steps as it considers appropriate to raise public awareness about the election and how to vote in it.

Conduct of elections

54 Returning officers etc

- | | |
|---|----|
| (1) The returning officer for an election of a police and crime commissioner for a police area (“the police area returning officer”) is to be a person who – | 5 |
| (a) is an acting returning officer by virtue of section 28(1) of the Representation of the People Act 1983 (acting returning officer for parliamentary election) for a constituency falling wholly or partly within the police area, and | 10 |
| (b) is designated for the purposes of this subsection by order of the Secretary of State. | |
| (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations confer functions – | |
| (a) on police area returning officers, and | |
| (b) on local returning officers. | 15 |
| (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may apply or incorporate, with or without modifications or exceptions, any relevant provision. | |
| (4) Each relevant local authority must place the services of its officers at the disposal of any person on whom functions are conferred under subsection (2) in relation to the police area for the purpose of assisting that person in the discharge of those functions. | 20 |
| (5) In this section – | |
| “local authority” means – | |
| (a) a district council, | |
| (b) a county council in England for a county in which there are no district councils, | 25 |
| (c) the Council of the Isles of Scilly, | |
| (d) a county council or county borough council in Wales; | |
| “local election” means an election of members of a local authority; | |
| “local returning officer” means a person who, by virtue of section 35 of the Representation of the People Act 1983, is a returning officer for any local elections; | 30 |
| “relevant local authority”, in relation to a police area, means a local authority whose area falls wholly or partly within the police area; | |
| “relevant provision” means any provision (whenever passed or made) of, or made under, any of the following – | 35 |
| (a) the Representation of the People Acts, | |
| (b) the Local Government Act 1972, | |
| (c) the Local Government Act 2000, | |
| (d) the Political Parties, Elections and Referendums Act 2000, | 40 |
| (e) the European Parliamentary Elections Act 2002, | |
| (f) the Government of Wales Act 2006, and | |
| (g) any other enactment relating to parliamentary elections, European Parliamentary elections or local government elections. | 45 |

55 Returning officers: expenditure

- (1) A returning officer may recover charges in respect of services rendered, or expenses incurred, by the officer for or in connection with an election of a police and crime commissioner if –
- (a) the services were necessarily rendered, or the expenses were necessarily incurred, for the efficient and effective conduct of the election, and 5
 - (b) the total of the officer’s charges does not exceed the amount (“the overall maximum recoverable amount”) specified in, or determined in accordance with, an order made by the Secretary of State, with the consent of the Treasury, for the purposes of this subsection. 10
- (2) An order under subsection (1) may specify, or make provision for determining in accordance with the order, a maximum recoverable amount for services or expenses of any specified description.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the returning officer may not recover more than the specified maximum recoverable amount in respect of any specified services or expenses. 15
- (4) In a particular case the Secretary of State may authorise the payment of –
- (a) more than the overall maximum recoverable amount, or
 - (b) more than the specified maximum recoverable amount for any specified services or expenses, 20
- if the Secretary of State is satisfied that the conditions in subsection (5) are met.
- (5) Those conditions are –
- (a) that it was reasonable for the returning officer concerned to render the services or incur the expenses, and 25
 - (b) that the charges in question are reasonable.
- (6) *The amount of any charges recoverable in accordance with this section is to be paid by the Secretary of State on an account being submitted to the Secretary of State.*
- (7) But the Secretary of State may, before payment, apply for the account to be taxed under section 56. 30
- (8) Where the superannuation contributions required to be paid by a local authority in respect of any person are increased by any fee paid under this section as part of a returning officer’s charges at an election of a police and crime commissioner, then on an account being submitted to the Secretary of State a sum equal to the increase must be paid to the authority by the Secretary of State. 35
- (9) On the request of a returning officer for an advance on account of the officer’s charges, the Secretary of State may make such an advance on such terms as the Secretary of State thinks fit.
- (10) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision as to – 40
- (a) the time when, and
 - (b) the manner and form in which,
- accounts are to be rendered to the Secretary of State for the purposes of the payment of a returning officer’s charges.
- (11) *Any sums required by the Secretary of State for making payments under this section are to be charged on, and paid out of, the Consolidated Fund.* 45

- (12) In this section –
 “local authority” has the same meaning as in section 54;
 “local returning officer” has the same meaning as in that section;
 “returning officer” means –
 (a) a police area returning officer, or 5
 (b) a local returning officer on whom functions are conferred under
 subsection (2) of that section;
 “specified” means specified in, or determined in accordance with, an
 order under subsection (1).
- 56 Taxation of returning officer’s account 10**
- (1) Any application under section 55(7) for a returning officer’s account to be
taxed is to be made to the county court.
- (2) On any such application the court has jurisdiction –
 (a) to tax the account –
 (i) in such manner, and 15
 (ii) at such time and place,
 as the court thinks fit, and
 (b) finally to determine the amount payable to the returning officer.
- (3) On any such application the returning officer may apply to the court to
examine any claim made by any person against the officer in respect of matters
charged in the account. 20
- (4) Where an application is made in respect of a claim under subsection (3) –
 (a) notice of the application must be given to the claimant;
 (b) the court must give the claimant an opportunity to be heard and to
 tender any evidence; 25
 (c) the court may allow or disallow the claim, with or without costs;
 (d) the determination of the court is final for all purposes and as against all
 persons.
- (5) In this section “returning officer” has the same meaning as in section 55.
- 57 Voting at elections of police and crime commissioners 30**
- (1) This section applies to any election under this Chapter of a police and crime
commissioner for a police area.
- (2) The commissioner is to be returned under the simple majority system, unless
there are three or more candidates.
- (3) If there are three or more candidates – 35
 (a) the commissioner is to be returned under the supplementary vote
 system, and
 (b) any vote in the election is a supplementary vote.
- (4) Schedule 9 (the supplementary vote system) has effect.
- (5) In subsection (3), “supplementary vote” means a vote capable of being given to
indicate first and second preferences from among the candidates. 40

58 Power to make provision about elections etc

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make provision as to –
- (a) the conduct of elections of persons to be police and crime commissioners; 5
 - (b) the questioning of such an election and the consequences of irregularities. 5
- (2) The provision which may be made under subsection (1)(a) includes, in particular, provision –
- (a) about registration of electors; 10
 - (b) for disregarding alterations in a register of electors; 10
 - (c) about the registration of political parties in connection with elections of police and crime commissioners; 10
 - (d) about the limitation of the election expenses of candidates; 10
 - (e) about funding and expenditure of candidates and political parties in relation to elections of police and crime commissioners; 15
 - (f) for the combination of polls at elections of police and crime commissioners and other polls; 15
 - (g) for any election held in consequence of any irregularity at an ordinary election to be treated as held at an ordinary election for any of the purposes of this Act. 20
- (3) An order under subsection (1) may –
- (a) apply or incorporate, with or without modifications or exceptions, any relevant provision; 25
 - (b) modify any form contained in any relevant provision so far as may be necessary to enable it to be used both for the original purpose and in relation to elections for police and crime commissioners; 25
 - (c) include provision creating criminal offences. 25
- (4) The Secretary of State may by order make modifications of any relevant provision that are consequential on any provision of –
- (a) section 1(4), 30
 - (b) this Chapter, 30
 - (c) an order under subsection (1), or 30
 - (d) regulations under section 54. 30
- (5) Provision that may be made under subsection (4) includes, in particular provision modifying any relevant provision so as to apply (with or without modifications) –
- (a) in relation to elections for police and crime commissioners as it applies in relation to other elections; 35
 - (b) in relation to police and crime commissioners as it applies in relation to persons elected at other elections. 40
- (6) In this section –
- “relevant provision” means any provision (whenever passed or made) of, or made under, any of the following –
- (a) the Representation of the People Acts, 45
 - (b) the Local Government Act 1972, 45
 - (c) the Local Government Act 2000, 45
 - (d) the Political Parties, Elections and Referendums Act 2000, 45

- (e) the European Parliamentary Elections Act 2002,
 - (f) the Government of Wales Act 2006, and
 - (g) any other enactment relating to parliamentary elections, European Parliamentary elections or local government elections;
- “modify” includes amend, repeal or revoke (and related terms are to be read accordingly). 5

Vacancy in office of police and crime commissioner

59 Date of vacancy in office of commissioner

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a vacancy in the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area is to be regarded as occurring –
 - (a) in the case of a vacancy in consequence of the failure of, or other irregularity in relation to, an election, at the time specified in an order under section 58;
 - (b) in the case of resignation, on receipt of the notice of resignation by the appropriate officer; 15
 - (c) in the case of death, on the date of death;
 - (d) in any case within subsection (2), on the date on which the office of police and crime commissioner for the police area is declared to have been vacated by the High Court or by the appropriate officer, as the case may be. 20
- (2) The cases referred to in subsection (1)(d) are –
 - (a) where the person elected as police and crime commissioner fails to make and deliver a declaration of acceptance of office in accordance with section 71; 25
 - (b) where a vacancy arises under section 63 (incapacity of commissioner: acting commissioner acting for 6 months);
 - (c) where a person becomes disqualified –
 - (i) from being a police and crime commissioner, or
 - (ii) from being the police and crime commissioner for the police area. 30
- (3) The appropriate officer must give public notice of a vacancy in the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area.
- (4) The appropriate officer must give notice of a vacancy in the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area to the police area returning officer. 35
- (5) Any notice under subsection (3) or (4) must be given as soon as practicable after the date on which the vacancy is to be regarded under this section as occurring.

60 Declaration of vacancy in certain cases

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where –
 - (a) a police and crime commissioner for a police area becomes disqualified (whether by virtue of this or any other Act) –
 - (i) from being a police and crime commissioner, or
 - (ii) from being the police and crime commissioner for the police area, 40

-
- (b) the person elected as police and crime commissioner for a police area fails to make and deliver a declaration of acceptance of office in accordance with section 71, or
- (c) a vacancy arises under section 63 (incapacity of commissioner: acting commissioner acting for 6 months). 5
- (2) The appropriate officer must forthwith declare the office of police and crime commissioner for that police area to be vacant, unless –
- (a) it has been declared vacant by the High Court, or
- (b) an application has been made to the High Court for a declaration under section 72 and the grounds in issue include any ground on which the appropriate officer would (but for this paragraph) make the declaration. 10
- 61 Resignation of commissioner**
- (1) A police and crime commissioner may at any time resign office by giving notice to the appropriate officer. 15
- (2) Any such resignation takes effect on the officer’s receipt of the notice.
- Vacancy or incapacity*
- 62 Appointment of acting commissioner**
- (1) The police and crime panel for a police area must appoint a person to act as police and crime commissioner for that area (the “acting commissioner”) if – 20
- (a) no person holds the office of police and crime commissioner for that area,
- (b) the police and crime commissioner for that area is incapacitated, or
- (c) the police and crime commissioner for that area is suspended in accordance with section 30. 25
- (2) The police and crime panel may appoint a person as acting commissioner only if the person is a member of the police and crime commissioner’s staff at the time of the appointment.
- (3) In appointing a person as acting commissioner in a case where the police and crime commissioner is incapacitated, the police and crime panel must have regard to any representations made by the commissioner in relation to the appointment. 30
- (4) All the functions of a police and crime commissioner are exercisable by an acting commissioner, apart from –
- (a) issuing or varying a police and crime plan under section 5; 35
- (b) appointing, suspending or removing the chief constable under section 38; and
- (c) setting a precept under section 40 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992.
- (5) Any property or rights vested in the police and crime commissioner may be dealt with by the acting commissioner as if vested in the acting commissioner. 40
- (6) The appointment of an acting commissioner ceases to have effect upon the occurrence of the earliest of these events –

- (a) the election of a person as police and crime commissioner;
 - (b) the termination by the police and crime panel, or by the acting commissioner, of the appointment of the acting commissioner;
 - (c) in a case where the acting commissioner is appointed because the police and crime commissioner is incapacitated, the commissioner ceasing to be incapacitated; 5
 - (d) in a case where the acting commissioner is appointed because the police and crime commissioner is suspended, the commissioner ceasing to be suspended.
- (7) In a case where – 10
- (a) the acting commissioner is appointed because the police and crime commissioner is incapacitated or suspended, and
 - (b) a vacancy subsequently occurs in the office of police and crime commissioner,
- the occurrence of that vacancy does not affect the appointment of the acting commissioner (and accordingly subsection (6)(c) or (d) does not apply). 15
- (8) For the purposes of this section –
- (a) a police and crime commissioner is incapacitated if the commissioner is unable to exercise the functions of commissioner, except where the commissioner is unable to exercise those functions only because the commissioner has yet to give a declaration of office under section 71; and 20
 - (b) it is for the police and crime panel for a police area to determine whether or not the police and crime commissioner for that area is incapacitated. 25
- (9) Subject to subsection (4)(a) to (c), a reference in any enactment to a police and crime commissioner includes a reference to an acting commissioner.

63 Vacancy where acting commissioner acts for 6 months

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where –
- (a) an acting commissioner is appointed under section 62 to act for the police and crime commissioner for a police area because the police and crime commissioner is incapacitated, and 30
 - (b) the police and crime commissioner does not cease to be incapacitated during the period of 6 months beginning with the day on which the acting commissioner is appointed. 35
- (2) At the end of that 6 month period –
- (a) the police and crime commissioner ceases to be police and crime commissioner, and
 - (b) accordingly, the office of police and crime commissioner for that police area becomes vacant. 40

Disqualification

64 Disqualification from election as police and crime commissioner

- (1) A person is disqualified from being elected to the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area at any election unless –

- (a) the person has attained the age of 18 when nominated as a candidate at the election, and
- (b) on each relevant day, the person is registered in the register of local government electors for an electoral area in respect of an address in the police area. 5
- (2) In this section “relevant day”, in relation to a person who is a candidate at an election, means –
- (a) the day on which the person is nominated as a candidate at the election;
- (b) the day of the poll at the election.
- (3) A person is disqualified from being elected to the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area at an ordinary election if the person has been nominated as a candidate for election as police and crime commissioner for any other police area at that election. 10
- (4) A person is disqualified from being elected to the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area at an election other than an ordinary election if – 15
- (a) the person is police and crime commissioner for any other police area, or
- (b) the person has been nominated as a candidate for election as police and crime commissioner for any other police area for which an election is held on the same day. 20

65 Police and crime commissioner not to serve for more than two terms

- (1) A person is disqualified from being elected as police and crime commissioner for a police area if the person has been elected as police and crime commissioner for that area at two previous elections. 25
- (2) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (1) –
- (a) whether any election is, or was, an ordinary election;
- (b) whether (and if so for how long), having been elected at a previous election, the person acted as police and crime commissioner for the area. 30
- (3) An election which has been declared void under any provision made by or under this Chapter is to be disregarded for the purposes of subsection (1).
- (4) If an order under section 58 makes provision for a court to declare that a person should have been elected in place of the person elected, it may make provision for a person so declared to be treated for the purposes of subsection (1) as having been elected at an election. 35
- (5) Where a police area alteration order is made, any affected police area is to be treated for the purposes of this section as a different police area from any resulting police area.
- (6) Subsection (5) is subject to any provision made to the contrary by the police area alteration order. 40
- (7) In this section –
- “affected police area”, in relation to a police area alteration order, means a police area –
- (a) any part of whose boundary is altered by the order, or 45

- (b) which is abolished by the order;
- “police area alteration order” means –
 - (a) an order under section 32 of the Police Act 1996 (power to alter police areas by order);
 - (b) an order under section 10 of the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 (implementation of Boundary Committee for England review of local government areas) which alters the boundary of any police area in England; 5
 - (c) an order under section 58 of the Local Government Act 1972 (implementation of proposals by Local Government Boundary Commission for Wales) which alters the boundary of any police area in Wales; 10
- “resulting police area”, in relation to a police area alteration order, means a police area –
 - (a) which is created by the order, or 15
 - (b) any part of whose boundary results from the order.

66 Disqualification from election or holding office as police and crime commissioner: police grounds

- (1) A person is disqualified from being elected as, or being, a police and crime commissioner if the person – 20
 - (a) is disqualified from being a member of the House of Commons under section 1(1)(d) of the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (members of police forces for police areas in the United Kingdom);
 - (b) is a member of –
 - (i) the British Transport Police Force; 25
 - (ii) the Civil Nuclear Constabulary;
 - (c) is a special constable appointed –
 - (i) under section 27 of the Police Act 1996 for a police area or the City of London police area;
 - (ii) under section 25 of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (British Transport Police Force); 30
 - (d) is a member of staff of the chief officer of police of any police force maintained for a police area;
 - (e) is a member of staff of –
 - (i) a police and crime commissioner; 35
 - (ii) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 - (f) is the Mayor of London;
 - (g) is a member of the Common Council of the City of London or a member of staff of that Council in its capacity as a police authority;
 - (h) is a member (including a member who is chairman or chief executive), or member of staff, of – 40
 - (i) the British Transport Police Authority;
 - (ii) the Civil Nuclear Police Authority;
 - (iii) the Independent Police Complaints Commission;
 - (iv) the Serious Organised Crime Agency; 45
 - (v) the National Policing Improvement Agency;
 - (i) holds any employment in an entity which is under the control of –
 - (i) a local policing body;

-
- (ii) any body mentioned in paragraph (h);
 - (iii) the chief officer of police for any police force maintained for a police area or the City of London police area;
 - (iv) the chief officer of police for any police force mentioned in paragraph (b). 5
- (2) In this section, “member of staff”, in relation to any person (“A”), includes a person (“B”) who works for A –
- (a) under a contract of employment,
 - (b) under a contract for services, or
 - (c) in accordance with arrangements made between B’s employer and A; 10
- and for this purpose B works for A if B provides services for A under the direction and control of A.
- (3) In subsection (1)(i), the reference to an entity under the control of a local policing body or other body or a chief officer of police is to be construed in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State. 15
- (4) In its application in relation to the first election of a police and crime commissioner to be held for a police area, this section applies as if –
- (a) for paragraphs (d) to (g) of subsection (1) there were substituted –
 - “(d) any member, or member of staff, of a police authority within the meaning of the Police Act 1996 (see section 101 of that Act);”, and 20
 - (b) for paragraph (i)(i) of that subsection there were substituted –
 - “(i) a police authority within the meaning of the Police Act 1996.”
- 67 Disqualification from election or holding office as police and crime commissioner: other grounds 25**
- (1) A person is disqualified from being elected as, or being, a police and crime commissioner unless the person satisfies the citizenship condition (see section 69).
- (2) A person is disqualified from being elected as, or being, a police and crime commissioner if the person – 30
- (a) is disqualified from being a member of the House of Commons under section 1(1)(a) to (c) of the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (judges, civil servants, members of the armed forces), or
 - (b) is a member of the legislature of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom. 35
- (3) A person is disqualified from being elected as, or being, a police and crime commissioner if –
- (a) the person is the subject of –
 - (i) a debt relief restrictions order under paragraph 1 of Schedule 4ZB to the Insolvency Act 1986; 40
 - (ii) an interim debt relief restrictions order under paragraph 5 of that Schedule;
 - (iii) a bankruptcy restrictions order under paragraph 1 of Schedule 4A to that Act; 45
 - (iv) a bankruptcy restrictions interim order under paragraph 5 of that Schedule;

- (b) a debt relief restrictions undertaking has effect in respect of the person under paragraph 7 of Schedule 4ZB to that Act;
- (c) the person has—
- (i) within the previous 5 years, been convicted in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man, of any offence, and
 - (ii) been sentenced in respect of the conviction to a term of imprisonment of 3 months or longer without the option of a fine, or
- (d) the person is incapable of being elected as a member of the House of Commons, or is required to vacate a seat in the House of Commons, under Part 3 of the Representation of the People Act 1983 (consequences of corrupt or illegal practices). 5
- (4) For the purpose of subsection (3)(c)—
- (a) the reference to a sentence of imprisonment includes a reference to a suspended sentence; 15
 - (b) a person is to be treated as having been convicted—
 - (i) on the expiry of the ordinary period allowed for an appeal or application in respect of the conviction, or
 - (ii) if an appeal or application is made in respect of the conviction, when the appeal or application is finally disposed of or abandoned or fails by reason of non-prosecution. 20
- (5) A person is disqualified from being elected as, or being, police and crime commissioner for a police area if the person—
- (a) is a member of staff of a relevant council, or 25
 - (b) holds any employment in an entity which is under the control of a relevant council within subsection (7)(a), (b), (c) or (f).
- (6) For this purpose—
- “member of staff” has the same meaning as in section 66;
 - “relevant council”, in relation to a police area, means a council within subsection (7) for an area which, or any part of which, lies within the police area. 30
- (7) Those councils are—
- (a) a county council;
 - (b) a county borough council; 35
 - (c) a district council;
 - (d) a parish council;
 - (e) a community council;
 - (f) the Council of the Isles of Scilly.
- (8) In subsection (5)(b), the reference to an entity under the control of a relevant council is to be construed in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State. 40
- (9) Nothing in subsection (5) is to be taken to disqualify a person by virtue of being a teacher, or otherwise employed, in a school or other educational institution maintained or assisted by a relevant council. 45

68 Disqualification of person holding office as police and crime commissioner

A person becomes disqualified from being a police and crime commissioner upon becoming a member of –

- (a) the House of Commons;
- (b) the Scottish Parliament; 5
- (c) the National Assembly for Wales;
- (d) the Northern Ireland Assembly;
- (e) the European Parliament.

69 Citizenship condition

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of section 67. 10
- (2) A person satisfies the citizenship condition if the person is –
 - (a) a qualifying Commonwealth citizen,
 - (b) a citizen of the Republic of Ireland, or
 - (c) a citizen of the Union.
- (3) For the purposes of this section, a person is a qualifying Commonwealth citizen if the person is a Commonwealth citizen and – 15
 - (a) is not a person who requires leave under the Immigration Act 1971 to enter or remain in the United Kingdom, or
 - (b) is a person who requires such leave but for the time being has (or is, by virtue of any enactment, to be treated as having) indefinite leave to remain within the meaning of that Act. 20
- (4) But a person who does not require leave to enter or remain in the United Kingdom by virtue only of section 8 of the Immigration Act 1971 (exceptions to requirement for leave in special cases) is not a qualifying Commonwealth citizen by virtue of subsection (3)(a). 25
- (5) In this section the expression “citizen of the Union” is to be construed in accordance with Article 20(1) of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union.

70 Validity of acts

The acts of a person elected as police and crime commissioner for a police area under this Chapter who acts in that office are, despite any disqualification – 30

- (a) from being, or being elected as, a police and crime commissioner, or
- (b) from being, or being elected as police and crime commissioner for that area,

as valid and effectual as if the person had not been so disqualified. 35

Elections: further provision

71 Declaration of acceptance of office of police and crime commissioner

- (1) A person elected to the office of police and crime commissioner for any police area may not act in that office unless the person has – 40
 - (a) made a declaration of acceptance of the office in a form specified in an order made by the Secretary of State, and

- (b) delivered the declaration to the appropriate officer, in each case, when not ineligible by virtue of subsection (5).
- (2) If the person fails to make and deliver a declaration in accordance with subsection (1) within the period of two months beginning with the day after the election, the office of police and crime commissioner for that area becomes vacant at the end of the period. 5
- (3) Any declaration made under this section must be made before –
- (a) the appropriate officer;
 - (b) a justice of the peace or magistrate in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man, or 10
 - (c) a commissioner appointed to administer oaths in the Senior Courts.
- (4) Any person before whom a declaration is authorised to be made under this section may take the declaration.
- (5) A person is ineligible to make or give a declaration of acceptance of office under this section in respect of the office of police and crime commissioner for a police area at any time when the person is a member of – 15
- (a) the House of Commons;
 - (b) the Scottish Parliament;
 - (c) the National Assembly for Wales;
 - (d) the Northern Ireland Assembly; 20
 - (e) the European Parliament.
- (6) No salary, and no payment towards the provision of superannuation benefits, is to be paid under this Act to or in respect of a police and crime commissioner until the commissioner has complied with the requirements of subsection (1).
- (7) Subsection (6) does not affect any entitlement of a police and crime commissioner to payments in respect of the period before the commissioner complies with the requirements of subsection (1) once the commissioner has complied with those requirements. 25

72 Judicial proceedings as to disqualification or vacancy

- (1) Any person who claims that a person purporting to be a police and crime commissioner for a police area is, or at any time since being elected has been, disqualified – 30
- (a) from being a police and crime commissioner; or
 - (b) from being police and crime commissioner for the police area,
- may apply to the High Court for a declaration to that effect, and that accordingly the office of police and crime commissioner for the area is vacant. 35
- (2) An application under subsection (1) in respect of any person may be made whether the grounds on which it is made are alleged to have subsisted at the time when the person was elected or to have arisen subsequently.
- (3) No declaration may be made under this section in respect of any person on grounds which subsisted when the person was elected, if an election petition under an order under section 58 is pending or has been tried in which the person's disqualification on those grounds is or was in issue. 40

-
- (4) Any person who claims that a person purporting to be a police and crime commissioner for a police area has ceased to be the police and crime commissioner for the police area by virtue of –
- (a) section 63, or
 - (b) section 71,
- may apply to the High Court for a declaration to that effect. 5
- (5) On an application under this section –
- (a) the person in respect of whom the application is made is to be the respondent, and
 - (b) the applicant must give such security for the costs of the proceedings as the court may direct. 10
- (6) The amount of the security may not exceed £5,000 or such other sum as the Secretary of State may specify by order.
- (7) The decision of the court on an application under this section is final.
- 73 Police and crime commissioners not to sit or vote in House of Lords 15**
- (1) A person elected as a police and crime commissioner is disqualified while holding office as a police and crime commissioner –
- (a) from sitting or voting in the House of Lords, and
 - (b) from sitting or voting in a committee of the House of Lords or a joint committee of both Houses of Parliament. 20
- (2) No writ of summons is to be issued to a member of the House of Lords while disqualified under this section.
- (3) Where a member of the House of Lords is elected as a police and crime commissioner for a police area, the police area returning officer must notify the Speaker of the House of Lords. 25
- (4) In this section references to a member of the House of Lords are references to a person who is or, but for this section, would be entitled to receive writs of summons to attend that House.
- 74 Amendment of police areas: term of office of commissioner**
- (1) Subsection (2) applies where a person becomes police and crime commissioner for a resulting police area by virtue of, or of an election required to be held by, a police area alteration order. 30
- (2) The person’s term of office as police and crime commissioner ends at the time when it would end had the person been elected as police and crime commissioner at the previous ordinary election of commissioners in England or, as the case may be, Wales. 35
- (3) In this section –
- “police area alteration order” means –
- (a) an order under section 32 of the Police Act 1996 (power to alter police areas by order); 40
 - (b) an order under section 10 of the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 (implementation of Boundary Committee for England review of local government areas) which alters the boundary of any police area in England;

- (c) an order under section 58 of the Local Government Act 1972 (implementation of proposals by Local Government Boundary Commission for Wales) which alters the boundary of any police area in Wales;
- “resulting police area”, in relation to a police area alteration order, means a police area existing immediately after the order comes into force –
- (a) which is created by the order, or
- (b) any part of whose boundary results from the order.
- (4) References in this section to the coming into force of a police area alteration order are references to the changes in police areas made by the order taking effect. 10
- 75 Computation of time and timing of elections etc**
- (1) Subsection (2) applies where the day, or the last day, on which anything is required or permitted to be done by or under section 50, 51 or 71 is not a business day. 15
- (2) The requirement or permission is deemed to relate instead to the first business day after that day.
- (3) Where under subsection (2) the day of an election is postponed, the day to which it is postponed is to be treated, for the purpose of any relevant provision, as the day of election. 20
- (4) Any day which is not a business day is to be disregarded in computing any period of time for the purpose of section 51.
- (5) In this section –
- “business day” means a day other than –
- a Saturday, 25
- a Sunday,
- Christmas Eve,
- Christmas Day,
- Good Friday,
- a bank holiday, or 30
- a day appointed for public thanksgiving or mourning;
- “relevant provision” means any provision of or made under this Act or any of the election enactments (within the meaning of section 58).
- 76 Elections: consequential amendments**
- Schedule 10 (consequential amendments relating to elections of persons as police and crime commissioners) has effect. 35
- 77 The appropriate officer**
- (1) For each police area, other than the metropolitan police district, the Secretary of State must by order designate a local authority.
- (2) In this Chapter, the “appropriate officer”, in relation to any such police area, means the head of paid service of the local authority designated for that police area. 40

- (3) In this section –
- “local authority” means –
- (a) a district council,
 - (b) a county council in England for a county in which there are no district councils, 5
 - (c) the Council of the Isles of Scilly,
 - (d) a county council or county borough council in Wales;
- “head of paid service”, in relation to a council, means the person designated by the council under section 4(1)(a) of the Local Government Act 1989. 10

78 Interpretation of Chapter 6

In this Chapter, the following terms have the following meanings, unless the context otherwise requires –

- “appropriate officer” has the meaning given by section 77;
- “elector”, in relation to an election of a police and crime commissioner, means a person entitled to vote at the election; 15
- “elector”, in relation to a local government election, has same meaning as in the Representation of the People Act 1983 (see section 202 of that Act);
- “electoral area” has the same meaning as in that Act as it applies in relation to England and Wales (see section 203 of that Act); 20
- “local government election” has the same meaning as in that Act as it applies in relation to England and Wales (see section 203 of that Act);
- “local government elector” means a person registered as a local government elector in the register of electors in accordance with the provisions of the Representation of the People Acts; 25
- “ordinary election” has the meaning given in section 50;
- “police area returning officer” has the meaning given by section 54.

CHAPTER 7

OTHER PROVISIONS RELATING TO POLICING AND CRIME AND DISORDER 30

Requirement for national policing capabilities

79 The strategic policing requirement

- (1) For section 37A of the Police Act 1996 (setting of strategic priorities for police authorities), substitute –
- “37A The strategic policing requirement** 35
- (1) The Secretary of State must, from time to time, issue a document (the “strategic policing requirement”) which sets out what, in the Secretary of State’s view, are –
- (a) national threats at the time the document is issued, and
 - (b) appropriate national policing capabilities to counter those national threats. 40

- (2) A chief officer of police must, in exercising the functions of chief officer, have regard to the strategic policing requirement.
- (3) Before issuing the strategic policing requirement, the Secretary of State –
- (a) must obtain the advice of – 5
 - (i) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of chief officers of police, and
 - (ii) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of local policing bodies, and
 - (b) must consult such other persons as the Secretary of State thinks fit. 10
- (4) The strategic policing requirement need not set out a national threat (in particular) if, in the Secretary of State’s view, countering the threat would involve police forces other than England and Wales police forces (and only those other police forces). 15
- (5) References in this section to national policing capabilities to counter a threat are references to the ability of all England and Wales police forces –
- (a) to exercise one or more functions to counter that threat,
 - (b) to exercise one or more functions in one or more particular ways to counter that threat, or 20
 - (c) to exercise one or more functions in accordance with common operational standards to counter that threat.
- (6) In this section –
- “England and Wales police force” means – 25
 - (a) a police force maintained under section 2,
 - (b) the metropolitan police force, and
 - (c) the City of London Police Force;
 - “national threat” means a threat (whether actual or prospective) which is – 30
 - (a) a threat to national security, public safety, public order or public confidence that is of such gravity as to be of national importance, or
 - (b) a threat which can be countered effectively or efficiently only by national policing capabilities to counter the threat.”. 35

Duties and powers of Secretary of State

80 General duty of Secretary of State

The Secretary of State must exercise the powers conferred by this Part in such manner and to such extent as appears to the Secretary of State to be best calculated to promote the efficiency and effectiveness of the police. 40

81 Obtaining advice from representative bodies

- (1) The Secretary of State may, in connection with the exercise by the Secretary of State of any function relating to the police or policing, require a representative body to give the Secretary of State advice on any matter.
- (2) A requirement under subsection (1) may specify the period within which the advice is to be given. 5
- (3) A representative body must comply with a requirement under subsection (1).
- (4) In a case where –
- (a) the Secretary of State makes such a request, and
 - (b) the representative body gives the advice (and, where applicable, does so within the period specified), 10
- the Secretary of State must have regard to the advice in that exercise of that function.
- (5) In this section “representative body” means any body which appears to the Secretary of State to represent the professional views of members of one or more police forces. 15

82 Abolition of certain powers of Secretary of State

In the Police Act 1996, omit –

- (a) section 38 (performance targets for police strategic priorities);
- (b) section 39 (codes of practice for police authorities); 20
- (c) section 43 (reports from police authorities to Secretary of State).

83 Suspension and removal of senior police officers

- (1) The Police Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- (2) Section 42 (removal of chief constables etc) is amended in accordance with subsections (3) to (11). 25
- (3) For the title substitute “**Metropolitan police: suspension or removal of Commissioner or Deputy Commissioner**”.
- (4) For subsections (1) to (1B) substitute –
- “(1) The Secretary of State may require the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to exercise the power under section 48 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (the “2011 Act”) to call upon the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, or the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, to retire or resign. 30
 - (1A) The Secretary of State may also require the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to exercise the power under section 48 of the 2011 Act to suspend the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, or the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, if the Secretary of State considers that it is necessary for the maintenance of public confidence in the metropolitan police force for that police officer to be suspended.”. 35
- (5) In subsection (2), for the words before paragraph (a) substitute – 40
- “(2) Before requiring the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to exercise its power to call upon the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, or

- the Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, to retire or resign, the Secretary of State shall –”.
- (6) In subsection (2A), for the words from “notice” (in the second place) to the end substitute “notice to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.”.
- (7) In subsection (3A) – 5
- (a) in paragraph (a), for the words from “, Deputy” to “question” substitute “or Deputy Commissioner”;
- (b) in paragraph (b), for the words from “Metropolitan” to “concerned” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.
- (8) In subsection (3B), for the words from “, Deputy” to “question” substitute “or Deputy Commissioner”. 10
- (9) In subsection (4), for the words from “, the Deputy” to “constable” substitute “or Deputy Commissioner”.
- (10) For subsection (4A) substitute –
- “(4A) If the Secretary of State exercises the power conferred by subsection (1) to require the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime to call upon the Commissioner to retire or resign – 15
- (a) the requirement of section 48(1) of the 2011 Act to obtain the Secretary of State’s consent does not apply, and
- (b) section 48(5) of the 2011 Act does not apply.”. 20
- (11) Omit subsection (4C).
- (12) In section 50 (regulations for police forces), after subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1) or (2), regulations under this section may make provision with respect to the procedures to be followed by police and crime commissioners, or the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, in exercising – 25
- (a) powers of suspension, or
- (b) powers of removal,
- (whether, in the case of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, on their own initiative or in compliance with a requirement imposed by the Secretary of State). 30
- (2B) In subsection (2A) –
- “power of removal” means –
- (a) the power conferred on police and crime commissioners by section 38(3) of the 2011 Act to require chief constables to retire or resign; 35
- (b) the power conferred on the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime by section 48(3) of the 2011 Act to require the Commissioner or Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis to retire or resign; 40
- “power of suspension” means –
- (a) the power conferred on police and crime commissioners by section 38(2) of the 2011 Act to suspend chief constables;
- (b) the power conferred on the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime by section 48(1) of the 2011 Act to suspend 45

the Commissioner or Deputy Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;
and for this purpose “2011 Act” means the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011.”.

Her Majesty’s inspectors of constabulary

5

84 Functions of HMIC

- (1) Section 54 of the Police Act 1996 (appointment and functions of inspectors of constabulary) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) omit “to the Secretary of State”.
- (3) Omit subsection (2A). 10
- (4) After subsection (2B) insert –
 - “(2BA) The local policing body for a police area may at any time request the inspectors of constabulary to carry out an inspection under this section of a police force maintained for that police area; and a request under this subsection may include a request for the inspection to be confined to a particular part of the force in question, to particular matters or to particular activities of that force. 15
 - (2BB) Where a local policing body requests the inspectors to carry out an inspection under subsection (2BA), the body must pay to the inspectors such reasonable costs incurred or to be incurred in connection with the inspection as the inspectors may require.”. 20
- (5) Omit subsection (2C).
- (6) In subsection (4) –
 - (a) for “in such form as the Secretary of State may direct” substitute “on the carrying out of inspections under this section”, and 25
 - (b) for “Secretary of State” (in the third place) substitute “chief inspector”.
- (7) After subsection (4) insert –
 - “(4A) A report under subsection (4) must include the chief inspector’s assessment of the efficiency and effectiveness of policing in England and Wales for the year in respect of which the report is prepared.”. 30

85 HMIC reports: publication

- (1) Section 55 of the Police Act 1996 (publication of reports) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1) substitute –
 - “(1) The inspectors of constabulary must arrange for any report prepared under section 54 to be published in such manner as appears to the inspectors to be appropriate.”. 35
- (3) For subsection (2) substitute –
 - “(2) But the inspectors of constabulary must exclude from publication under subsection (1) anything that the inspectors consider –
 - (a) would be against the interests of national security, or 40

- (b) might jeopardise the safety of any person.
 - (2A) The inspectors must disclose to the Secretary of State anything excluded from publication by virtue of subsection (2).”.
 - (4) For subsection (3) substitute –
 - “(3) The inspectors of constabulary must send a copy of the published report to –
 - (a) the Secretary of State,
 - (b) the local policing body maintaining the police force to which the report relates,
 - (c) the chief officer of police of that police force, and
 - (d) any police and crime panel established under section 28 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 for the police area of that police force.”.
 - (5) In subsection (4) –
 - (a) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”, and
 - (b) for “authority” substitute “body”.
 - (6) In subsection (5) –
 - (a) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c) and in the words following that paragraph, for “authority” substitute “body”.
 - (7) In subsection (6) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
 - (8) Omit subsection (8).
- 86 Inspection programmes and frameworks**
- (1) Paragraph 2 of Schedule 4A to the Police Act 1996 (further provision about HMIC) is amended as follows.
 - (2) In sub-paragraph (1) omit “, or at such times as the Secretary of State may specify by order,”.
 - (3) In sub-paragraph (2) for “each of those persons or bodies” substitute “the Secretary of State”.
 - (4) After sub-paragraph (2) insert –
 - “(2A) The chief inspector of constabulary must –
 - (a) lay before Parliament a copy of each inspection programme or inspection framework prepared under this paragraph,
 - (b) arrange for each such programme or framework to be published in such manner as the chief inspector thinks appropriate, and
 - (c) send a copy of each such programme or framework to each of the persons or bodies listed in sub-paragraph (2)(a) to (j).
 - (2B) But the chief inspector of constabulary must obtain the approval of the Secretary of State to the inspection programme or framework in question before acting under sub-paragraph (2A).”.
 - (5) In sub-paragraph (3) –

- (a) before “to send” insert “under sub-paragraph (2A)(c)”, and
 (b) for “that sub-paragraph” substitute “sub-paragraph (2)”.
- (6) Omit sub-paragraph (4).
- (7) Before sub-paragraph (5) insert –
- “(4A) The Secretary of State may by order specify matters to which the chief inspector of constabulary must have regard in preparing an inspection programme or an inspection framework. 5
- (4B) Those matters may (in particular) include the need to secure, so far as possible, the following objectives –
- (a) that any requirements placed on police forces as a result of inspections carried out under section 54 are not unduly burdensome; and 10
- (b) that inspections under that section can be carried out promptly in response to matters that raise issues of national importance in relation to the police. 15
- (4C) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (4B)(b), the Secretary of State may issue guidance as to the matters that raise issues of national importance in relation to the police; and the chief inspector of constabulary must have regard to any such guidance in preparing an inspection programme or an inspection framework.”. 20

87 Powers in connection with HMIC inspections

- (1) In Schedule 4A to the Police Act 1996 (further provision about HMIC), after paragraph 6 insert –
- “Powers of inspectors regarding information etc*
- 6A (1) The chief officer of police of a police force must – 25
- (a) provide to an inspector such information and documents specified or described in a notification given by the inspector to that chief officer, and
- (b) produce or deliver up to the inspector all such evidence and other things so specified or described, 30
- as appear to the inspector to be required for the purposes of an inspection under section 54.
- (2) A notification under sub-paragraph (1) requiring any information or documents to be provided may authorise or require that they be provided electronically. 35
- (3) Anything that a chief officer is obliged to provide, produce or deliver up by virtue of a requirement imposed under sub-paragraph (1) must be provided, produced or delivered up in such form and manner, and within such period, as may be specified –
- (a) in the notification imposing the requirement, or 40
- (b) in any subsequent notification given by the inspector to the chief officer.
- (4) Nothing in this paragraph requires a chief officer –

- (a) to comply with an obligation imposed under sub-paragraph (1) before the earliest time at which it is practicable to do so, or
 - (b) to comply at all with any such obligation if it never becomes practicable to do so. 5
- (5) In this paragraph –
“document” means anything in which information of any description is recorded, and
“inspector” means – 10
- (a) an inspector of constabulary, or
 - (b) a person appointed under section 56 as an assistant inspector of constabulary or staff officer to the inspectors of constabulary.

Powers of inspectors regarding access to police premises

- 6B (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if – 15
- (a) an inspector requires the chief officer of police of a police force to allow the inspector to have access to any premises occupied for the purposes of that force and to documents and other things on those premises, and
 - (b) the requirement is imposed for the purposes of an inspection under section 54. 20
- (2) The chief officer must secure that the required access is allowed to the inspector.
- (3) Where there are reasonable grounds for not allowing the inspector to have the required access at the time at which the inspector seeks to have it, the obligation under sub-paragraph (2) has effect as an obligation to secure that the required access is allowed to the inspector at the earliest practicable time specified by the inspector after there cease to be any such grounds. 25
- (4) In this paragraph “document” and “inspector” have the same meanings as in paragraph 6A.”. 30

88 HMIC and freedom of information

In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (other public bodies and offices: general), at the appropriate place insert –
“The chief inspector of constabulary appointed under section 54(1) of the Police Act 1996.”. 35

Community safety partnerships

89 Crime and disorder strategies

Schedule 11 (which contains amendments to sections 5 to 7 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 in relation to the formulation and implementation of crime and disorder strategies) has effect. 40

*Policing in England and Wales***90 Collaboration agreements**

- (1) The Police Act 1996 is amended in accordance with subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) After section 22 insert –
- “22A Collaboration agreements** 5
- (1) A collaboration agreement may be made by –
- (a) two or more policing bodies; or
 - (b) the chief officers of police of one or more police forces and two or more policing bodies.
- (2) A collaboration agreement is an agreement containing one or more of the following – 10
- (a) provision about the discharge of functions of members of a police force (“force collaboration provision”);
 - (b) provision about support by a policing body for another policing body (“policing body collaboration provision”); 15
 - (c) provision about support by a policing body for the police force which another policing body is responsible for maintaining (“policing body & force collaboration provision”).
- (3) A collaboration agreement may not contain force collaboration provision unless the parties to the agreement consist of, or include, – 20
- (a) the chief officer of police of each police force to which the provision relates, and
 - (b) the policing body that is responsible for maintaining each such police force.
- (4) A collaboration agreement may not contain policing body collaboration provision unless the parties to the agreement consist of, or include, each policing body to which the provision relates. 25
- (5) A collaboration agreement may not contain policing body & force collaboration provision unless the parties to the agreement consist of, or include – 30
- (a) the policing body, or each policing body, to which the provision relates;
 - (b) the chief officer of police of the police force, or each police force, to which the provision relates; and
 - (c) the policing body that is responsible for maintaining each such police force. 35
- (6) Subsection (1) does not prevent other persons from being parties to collaboration agreements.
- (7) Subsection (2) does not prevent a collaboration agreement from including other kinds of provision. 40
- (8) For the purposes of subsections (3) and (5), the circumstances in which force collaboration provision, or policing body & force collaboration provision, is to be taken to relate to a police force include the cases where provision relates –

- (a) to functions of a kind which are or may be exercisable by members of that police force, or
 - (b) to the police area for which that police force is established.
- (9) For the purposes of subsections (4) and (5), the circumstances in which policing body collaboration provision, or policing body & force collaboration provision, is to be taken to relate to a policing body include the cases where provision relates –
- (a) to functions of a kind which are or may be exercisable by that policing body or members of the staff of that body, or
 - (b) to the police area for which that policing body is established.

22B Duty of chief officers to keep collaboration agreements under review

- (1) The chief officer of police of a police force must keep under consideration the ways in which the collaboration functions could be exercised by the chief officer and by one or more other persons to improve the efficiency or effectiveness of –
- (a) that police force, and
 - (b) one or more other police forces.
- (2) If the chief officer considers that there is a particular way in which the collaboration functions could be so exercised by the chief officer and by one or more other particular persons (“the proposed collaboration”), the chief officer must notify those other persons (the “proposed partners”) of the proposed collaboration.
- (3) The chief officer, and the proposed partners notified under subsection (2) (the “notified proposed partners”), must consider whether to exercise the collaboration functions to give effect to the proposed collaboration.
- (4) In considering whether to so exercise the collaboration functions, the chief officer and the notified proposed partners must consider whether the proposed collaboration would be in the interests of the efficiency or effectiveness of one or more police forces.
- (5) Subsection (6) applies if all, or two or more, of –
- (a) the chief officer, and
 - (b) the notified proposed partners,
- (the “agreeing parties”) are of the view that the proposed collaboration would be in the interests of the efficiency or effectiveness of one or more police forces (if the agreeing parties were to exercise the collaboration functions to give effect to the proposed collaboration, or to give effect to it so far as it relates to them).
- (6) The agreeing parties must exercise the collaboration functions so as to give effect to the proposed collaboration or to give effect to it so far as it relates to them.
- (7) In this section “collaboration functions” means functions of chief officers of police or policing bodies under any of sections 22A to 23I (apart from this section).

22C Duty of policing bodies to keep collaboration agreements under review

- (1) A policing body must keep under consideration the ways in which the collaboration functions could be exercised by the policing body and by one or more other persons to improve – 5
- (a) the efficiency or effectiveness of –
 - (i) that policing body,
 - (ii) the police force which that policing body is responsible for maintaining, or
 - (iii) that body and that force, and 10
 - (b) the efficiency or effectiveness of one or more other policing bodies and police forces.
- (2) If the policing body considers that there is a particular way in which the collaboration functions could be so exercised by the policing body and by one or more other particular persons (“the proposed collaboration”), the policing must notify those other persons (the “proposed partners”) of the proposed collaboration. 15
- (3) The policing body, and the proposed partners notified under subsection (2) (the “notified proposed partners”), must consider whether to exercise the collaboration functions to give effect to the proposed collaboration. 20
- (4) In considering whether to so exercise the collaboration functions, the policing body and the notified proposed partners must consider whether the proposed collaboration would be in the interests of the efficiency or effectiveness of one or more policing bodies or police forces. 25
- (5) Subsection (6) applies if all, or two or more, of –
- (a) the policing body, and
 - (b) the notified proposed partners,
- (the “agreeing parties”) are of the view that the proposed collaboration would be in the interests of the efficiency or effectiveness of one or more policing bodies or police forces (if the agreeing parties were to exercise the collaboration functions to give effect to the proposed collaboration, or to give effect to it so far as it relates to them). 30
- (6) The agreeing parties must exercise the collaboration functions so as to give effect to the proposed collaboration, or to give effect to it so far as it relates to them. 35
- (7) In this section “collaboration functions” means functions of policing bodies or chief officers of police under any of sections 22A to 23I (apart from this section).” 40
- (3) After section 23F insert –
- “23FA Police functions that must be the subject of force collaboration provision**
- (1) The Secretary of State may, by order, require a specified police function to be exercised in relation to – 45
- (a) all police areas, or
 - (b) all police areas apart from any specified in the order,

in accordance with police collaboration provision.

- (2) An order under this section may specify whether the specified police function is required to be exercised in relation to the specified police areas in accordance with police collaboration provision contained in—
 - (a) a single collaboration agreement which relates to all of those police areas, or 5
 - (b) a number of collaboration agreements which, between them, relate to all of those police areas.
- (3) Provision under subsection (2)(b) need not specify a particular number of collaboration agreements. 10
- (4) If, but for this subsection, an instrument containing an order under this section would be treated for the purposes of the standing orders of either House of Parliament as a hybrid instrument, it is to proceed in that House as if it were not a hybrid instrument.
- (5) In this section “specified” means specified in an order under this section.”. 15

(4) Schedule 12 (collaboration agreements) has effect.

91 Police powers for civilian employees under collaboration agreements

Schedule 13 (police powers for civilian employees under collaboration agreements) has effect. 20

92 Power to give directions

- (1) The Police Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 40 (powers to give directions in relation to police force), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In section 40A (powers to give directions in relation to police authority)— 25
 - (a) for “police authority” (in each place, including in the title) substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) for “the authority” substitute “the local policing body”.
- (4) In section 40B (procedure for directions under section 40 or 40A)—
 - (a) for subsection (2)(a) substitute— 30
 - “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners;
 - (aa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 - (ab) the Common Council”;
 - (b) in subsection (5), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 35

93 Provision of information by chief officers of police

In the Police Act 1996, for section 44 (reports from chief constables) and section

45 (criminal statistics) substitute –

“44 Provision of information by chief officers of police

- (1) The Secretary of State may require a chief officer of police of any police force to provide the Secretary of State with information on such matters as may be specified in the requirement, being matters connected with – 5
- (a) the policing of the police area for which that police force is maintained, or
- (b) the discharge of the national or international functions of that police force.
- (2) A requirement under subsection (1) may, in particular, specify information in the form of statistical data, being data connected with – 10
- (a) the policing of that police area, or
- (b) the discharge of the national or international functions of the police force for that area.
- (3) A requirement under subsection (1) may specify the form in which information is to be provided. 15
- (4) The Secretary of State may require a chief officer to do either or both of the following to publish, in such manner as appears to the Secretary of State to be appropriate, information provided in accordance with a requirement under subsection (1). 20
- (5) The Secretary of State may cause a consolidated and classified abstract of any information in the form of statistical data that is provided in accordance with subsection (1) to be prepared and laid before Parliament.”

94 Regulations about provision of equipment 25

- (1) Section 53 of the Police Act 1996 (regulations as to standard of equipment) is amended as follows.
- (2) In the title, after “**standard**” insert “**and provision**”.
- (3) After subsection (1A) insert –
- “(1AA) The Secretary of State may, by regulations, make provision about the arrangements which must be, may be, or must not be, used for the provision of equipment for use for police purposes. 30
- (1AA) The regulations may, in particular –
- (a) make provision about the nature or terms of such arrangements, or 35
- (b) prescribe arrangements which may be, or must be, used.”
- (4) In subsection (1B), after “subsection (1A)” insert “or (1AA)”.
- (5) In subsection (2), for paragraph (a) substitute – 40
- “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners;
- (aa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;”.

95 National and international functions

- (1) Section 96A of the Police Act 1996 (national and international functions of the metropolitan police force) is amended as follows.
- (2) In the title, for “force” substitute “**and other police forces**”.
- (3) For subsection (1) substitute – 5
 - “(1) The Secretary of State and the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may enter into agreements with respect to the level of performance to be achieved by the metropolitan police force in respect of any of its national or international obligations.
 - (1A) The Secretary of State and the police and crime commissioner that maintains a police force may enter into agreements with respect to the level of performance to be achieved by the police force in respect of any of its national or international obligations. 10
 - (1B) The Secretary of State and the Common Council may enter into agreements with respect to the level of performance to be achieved by the City of London police force in respect of any of its national or international obligations.”. 15
- (4) In subsection (2) –
 - (a) for “the metropolitan police force” substitute “a police force”;
 - (b) for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “local policing body”. 20
- (5) In subsection (3), for “The Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “A local policing body”.
- (6) Omit subsection (4).

CHAPTER 8

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS 25

96 Interpretation of Police Act 1996

- (1) Section 101 of the Police Act 1996 (interpretation) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) –
 - (a) after the definition of “City of London police area” insert –
 - ““Common Council” means the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as police authority for the City of London police area; 30
 - “elected local policing body” means –
 - (a) a police and crime commissioner;
 - (b) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 35
 - “local policing body” means –
 - (a) a police and crime commissioner (in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1);
 - (b) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime (in relation to the metropolitan police district); 40
 - (c) the Common Council (in relation to the City of London police area);

-
- “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime” means the body established under section 3 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011;”;
- (b) after the definition of “metropolitan police district” insert—
- ““national or international functions” means functions relating to—
- (a) the protection of prominent persons or their residences,
- (b) national security,
- (c) counter-terrorism, or
- (d) the provision of services for any other national or international purpose;
- “police and crime commissioner” means a body established under section 1 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011;”;
- (c) omit the definition of “police authority”;
- (d) in the definition of “police force”, for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
- (e) in the definition of “police fund”, for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) in relation to a police area for which there is an elected local policing body, the fund kept by that body under section 21 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011;”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert—
- “(3) References in this Act to the staff of a police and crime commissioner, or to the staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, have the same meaning as in the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011.”.
- 97 Amendments of the Interpretation Act 1978**
- (1) Schedule 1 to the Interpretation Act 1978 (words and expressions defined) is amended as follows.
- (2) After the entry for “Local land charges register” insert—
- ““Local policing body” has the meaning given by section 101(1) of the Police Act 1996.”.
- (3) After the entry for “Person” insert—
- ““Police and crime commissioner” means a police and crime commissioner established under section 1 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011.”.
- (4) In the entry that begins “Police area”, omit “, police authority”;
- (5) After the entry that begins “Police Area” insert—
- ““Police authority”, in relation to Scotland, has the meaning or effect described by sections 50 and 51(4) of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967.”.

98 Transitional provision

Schedule 14 (transitional provision) has effect.

99 Minor and consequential amendments

Schedule 15 (minor and consequential amendments) has effect.

100 Guidance

5

Any guidance under this Part –

- (a) must be in writing;
- (b) may be varied or revoked by further guidance;
- (c) may be given to one or more particular persons, or generally;
- (d) may make provision generally or in relation to specific cases; and
- (e) may make different provision for different cases.

101 Crime and disorder reduction

- (1) A reference to crime and disorder reduction is a reference to –
 - (a) reduction of crime and disorder (including anti-social and other behaviour adversely affecting the local environment),
 - (b) combating the misuse of drugs, alcohol and other substances, and
 - (c) reduction of re-offending.
- (2) In this section “anti-social behaviour” means behaviour by a person which causes or is likely to cause harassment, alarm or distress to one or more other persons not of the same household as the person.
- (3) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.

102 Interpretation of Part 1

- (1) In this Part (unless otherwise specified) –
 - “chief executive” means –
 - (a) in relation to a police and crime commissioner, the chief executive appointed by the commissioner under Schedule 1;
 - (b) in relation to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, the chief executive appointed by the Office under Schedule 3;
 - “chief finance officer” means –
 - (a) in relation to a police and crime commissioner, the chief finance officer appointed by the commissioner under Schedule 1;
 - (b) in relation to the chief constable of a police force to which Chapter 1 applies, the chief finance officer appointed by the chief constable under Schedule 2;
 - (c) in relation to the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, the chief finance officer appointed by the Office under Schedule 3;
 - (d) in relation to the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis, the chief finance officer appointed by the Commissioner under Schedule 4;
 - “chief officer of police” means –

-
- (a) in relation to a police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996, the chief constable of that force;
- (b) in relation to the metropolitan police force, the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;
- “crime and disorder reduction” has the meaning given in section 101; 5
- “elected local policing body” means –
- (a) in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996, the police and crime commissioner for the area;
- (b) in relation to the metropolitan police district, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 10
- “national or international functions” means functions relating to –
- (a) the protection of prominent persons or their residences,
- (b) national security,
- (c) counter-terrorism, or
- (d) the provision of services for any other national or international purpose; 15
- “police and crime panel” means –
- (a) in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996, the police and crime panel established under section 28;
- (b) in relation to the metropolitan police district, the committee established under section 32; 20
- “police and crime plan” has the meaning given in section 7;
- “police area” means –
- (a) a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 (police areas outside London), and 25
- (b) the metropolitan police district;
- “relevant chief officer of police”, in relation to –
- (a) a police area,
- (b) the police force for a police area,
- (c) the elected local policing body for a police area, or 30
- (d) the police and crime panel for a police area,
- means the chief officer of police of the police force for that area;
- “relevant elected local policing body”, in relation to –
- (a) a police area,
- (b) the police force for a police area, 35
- (c) the chief officer of police of the police force for a police area, or
- (d) the police and crime panel for a police area,
- means the elected local policing body for that area;
- “relevant police and crime panel”, in relation to –
- (a) a police area, 40
- (b) the police force for a police area,
- (c) the chief officer of police of the police force for a police area, or
- (d) the elected local policing body for a police area,
- means the police and crime panel for that area;
- “relevant police force”, in relation to – 45
- (a) a police area,
- (b) a chief officer of police of the police force for a police area,
- (c) the elected local policing body for a police area, or

- (d) the police and crime panel for a police area,
means the police force for that area.
- (2) References in this Part to a police and crime commissioner’s area are references to the police area for which the commissioner is established.
- (3) References in this Part to a police and crime commissioner’s staff are references to the following persons appointed under Schedule 1 – 5
- (a) the commissioner’s chief executive;
 - (b) the commissioner’s chief finance officer; and
 - (c) other staff.
- (4) References in this Part to a police force’s civilian staff are (except in the case of the metropolitan police force) references to – 10
- (a) the chief finance officer appointed by the chief constable of the force under paragraph 4 of Schedule 2, and
 - (b) the other staff appointed by that chief constable under that Schedule.
- (5) References in this Part to the staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime are references to – 15
- (a) the Office’s chief finance officer appointed under section 127(2) of the Greater London Authority Act 1999;
 - (b) the Office’s chief executive appointed under Schedule 3
 - (c) other staff appointed under Schedule 3; and 20
 - (d) the person (if any) appointed under section 19 as the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime (subject to paragraph 4(4) of Schedule 3 (Deputy Mayor an Assembly member)).
- (6) References in this Part to the metropolitan police force’s civilian staff are references to – 25
- (a) the chief finance officer appointed by the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis under paragraph 1 of Schedule 4, and
 - (b) the other staff appointed by the Commissioner under that Schedule.

PART 2

LICENSING 30

CHAPTER 1

AMENDMENTS OF THE LICENSING ACT 2003

Responsible authorities

103 Licensing authorities as responsible authorities

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) and (3). 35
- (2) In section 13(4) (responsible authorities) –
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert –
“*(za)* the relevant licensing authority and any other licensing authority in whose area part of the premises is situated,” and 40
 - (b) omit paragraph (g).

- (3) In section 69(4) (responsible authorities) –
- (a) before paragraph (a) insert –
- “(za) the relevant licensing authority and any other licensing authority in whose area part of the premises is situated,” and
- (b) omit paragraph (g). 5
- (4) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to –
- (a) applications relating to premises licences or club premises certificates that are made on or after the commencement of this section, and
- (b) notices under section 165(4) of the Licensing Act 2003 (closure orders) that are received by a licensing authority on or after the commencement of this section. 10

104 Primary Care Trusts and Local Health Boards as responsible authorities

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (4).
- (2) In section 5(3) (statement of licensing policy), after paragraph (b) insert – 15
- “(ba) each Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board for an area any part of which is in the licensing authority’s area,”.
- (3) In section 13(4) (authorised persons, interested parties and responsible authorities), after paragraph (b) insert –
- “(ba) the Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board for any area in which the premises are situated,”. 20
- (4) In section 69(4) (authorised persons, interested parties and responsible authorities), after paragraph (b) insert –
- “(ba) the Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board for any area in which the premises are situated,”. 25
- (5) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to –
- (a) applications relating to premises licences or club premises certificates that are made on or after the commencement of this section, and
- (b) notices under section 165(4) of the Licensing Act 2003 (closure orders) that are received by a licensing authority on or after that commencement. 30

Removing the vicinity test

105 Premises licences: who may make relevant representations

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (9).
- (2) In section 13 (authorised persons, interested parties and responsible authorities) – 35
- (a) in the title, omit “, interested parties”,
- (b) in subsection (1), omit ““interested party””, and
- (c) omit subsection (3).
- (3) In section 17(5) (application for premises licence) – 40

- (a) in paragraph (a)(ii), for “interested parties” substitute “persons who live, or are involved in a business, in the relevant licensing authority’s area and who are”,
 - (b) after paragraph (a) insert –
 - “(aa) require the relevant licensing authority to advertise the application within the prescribed period –
 - (i) in the prescribed form, and
 - (ii) in a manner which is prescribed and is likely to bring the application to the attention of the persons who are likely to be affected by it; and”,
 - (c) in paragraph (c), for “interested parties and responsible authorities” substitute “responsible authorities and other persons”.
- (4) In section 18(7) (determination of application for premises licence) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party or responsible authority” substitute “a responsible authority or other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”.
- (5) In section 31(6) (determination of application for provisional statement) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party or responsible authority” substitute “a responsible authority or other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”.
- (6) In section 35(6) (determination of application to vary premises licence) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party or responsible authority” substitute “a responsible authority or other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”.
- (7) In section 41B(2)(b)(ii) (determination of application for minor variation of premises licence), for “an interested party” substitute “any other person”.
- (8) In section 41D(6) (variation of premises licence: supply of alcohol from community premises), for paragraph (b) substitute –
“(b) subsection (6)(c) were omitted.”.
- (9) In section 194 (index of defined expressions), omit the entry for the expression “interested party, in Part 3”.
- (10) In section 33 of the Policing and Crime Act 2009 (individual members of licensing authorities to be interested parties), omit subsection (1).
- (11) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to applications relating to premises licences that are made on or after the commencement of this section.

106 Premises licences: who may apply for review

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (6).
- (2) In section 51 (application for review of premises licences) –
 - (a) in subsection (1), for “an interested party or a responsible authority” substitute “a responsible authority or any other person”, and

- (b) in subsection (3) –
 - (i) in paragraph (b), for “interested parties and responsible authorities” substitute “responsible authorities and other persons”, and
 - (ii) in paragraph (c), for “interested party” substitute “other person”. 5
- (3) In section 52(8) (determination of application for review of premises licence) –
 - (a) in paragraph (a)(i), for “an interested party” substitute “any other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”. 10
- (4) In section 53A(3) (summary reviews on application of senior police officer) –
 - (a) in paragraph (c), for “interested parties” substitute “other persons”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (e), for “interested party” substitute “other person”.
- (5) In section 53C(8) (review of premises licence following summary review notice) – 15
 - (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party” substitute “any other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”. 20
- (6) In section 167 (review of premises licence following closure order) –
 - (a) in subsection (4)(b), for “interested parties” substitute “other persons”,
 - (b) in subsection (4)(c), for “interested party” substitute “other person”,
 - (c) in subsection (10)(a), for “an interested party” substitute “any other person”, 25
 - (d) in subsection (10)(c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”, and
 - (e) in subsection (14), for ““interested party” and “responsible authority” have” substitute ““responsible authority” has”. 30
- (7) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to applications for review that are made on or after the commencement of this section.

107 Club premises certificates: who may make relevant representations

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (7).
- (2) In section 69 (authorised persons, interested parties and responsible authorities) – 35
 - (a) in the title, omit “, interested parties”,
 - (b) in subsection (1), omit ““interested party”,”, and
 - (c) omit subsection (3).
- (3) In section 71(6) (application for club premises certificate) – 40
 - (a) in paragraph (a)(ii), for “interested parties” substitute “persons who live, or are involved in a business, in the relevant licensing authority’s area and who are”,

- (b) after paragraph (a) insert –
 - “(aa) require the relevant licensing authority to advertise the application within the prescribed period –
 - (i) in the prescribed form, and
 - (ii) in a manner which is prescribed and is likely to bring the application to the attention of the persons who are likely to be affected by it; and”, and
 - (c) in paragraph (c), for “interested parties and responsible authorities” substitute “responsible authorities and other persons”.
- (4) In section 72(8) (determination of application for club premises certificate) –
 - (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party or responsible authority” substitute “a responsible authority or other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”.
- (5) In section 85(6) (determination of application to vary club premises certificate) –
 - (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party or responsible authority” substitute “a responsible authority or other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”.
- (6) In section 86B(2)(b)(ii) (determination of application for minor variation of club premises certificate), for “an interested party” substitute “any other person”.
- (7) In section 194 (index of defined expressions), omit the entry for the expression “interested party, in Part 4”.
- (8) In section 33 of the Policing and Crime Act 2009 (individual members of licensing authorities to be interested parties), omit subsection (2).
- (9) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to applications relating to club premises certificates that are made on or after the commencement of this section.

108 Club premises certificates: who may apply for review

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (4).
- (2) In section 87 (application for review of club premises certificate), for subsection (1) substitute –
 - “(1) Where a club holds a club premises certificate, a responsible authority or any other person may apply to the relevant licensing authority for a review of the certificate.”.
- (3) In section 87(3) (application for review of club premises certificate) –
 - (a) in paragraph (b), after “to the authority” insert “by the club, responsible authorities and other persons”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “interested party” substitute “other person”.
- (4) In section 88(8) (determination of application for review of club premises certificate) –

- (a) in paragraph (a), for “an interested party” substitute “any other person”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “an interested party (who is not also a responsible authority)” substitute “a person who is not a responsible authority”.
- (5) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to applications for review that are made on or after the commencement of this section. 5

Reducing the evidential burden on licensing authorities

109 Reducing the burden: premises licences

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (14).
- (2) In section 18 (determination of application for premises licence) – 10
 - (a) in subsection (3)(b), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”, and
 - (b) in subsection (4)(a)(i), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (3) In section 22(2) (prohibited conditions: plays), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (4) In section 25A(6) (grant of premises licence: supply of alcohol from community premises), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 15
- (5) In section 31 (determination of application for provisional statement) –
 - (a) in subsection (3)(b), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”, and
 - (b) in subsection (3)(c)(ii), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (6) In section 35(3)(b) (determination of application to vary premises licence), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 20
- (7) In section 39(3)(b) (determination of application to vary premises licence to specify premises supervisor), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (8) In section 41D(5) (variation of premises licence: supply of alcohol from community premises), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 25
- (9) In section 44(5)(b) (determination of transfer application), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (10) In section 48(3)(b) (cancellation of interim authority notice following police objections), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (11) In section 52(3) (determination of application for review of premises licence), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 30
- (12) In section 53B(8)(a) (supplementary provision about review of premises licence), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (13) In section 53C(2)(b) (review of premises licence following review notice), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 35
- (14) In section 177(5) (dancing and live music in certain small premises), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (15) The amendments made by this section (other than subsection (10)) apply in relation to applications relating to premises licences that are made on or after the commencement of this section. 40

- (16) The amendment made by subsection (10) of this section applies in relation to interim authority notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section.

110 Reducing the burden: club premises certificates

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (5). 5
- (2) In section 72 (determination of application for club premises certificate) –
(a) in subsection (3)(b), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”, and
(b) in subsection (4)(a)(i), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (3) In section 76(2) (prohibited conditions: plays), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 10
- (4) In section 85(3)(b) (determination of application to vary club premises certificate), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (5) In section 88(3) (determination of application for review of club premises certificate), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (6) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to applications relating to club premises certificates that are made on or after the commencement of this section. 15

111 Reducing the burden: other situations

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (6).
- (2) In section 105(2)(b) (counter notice following police objection), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 20
- (3) In section 120(7)(b)(i) (determination of application for grant of personal licence), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (4) In section 121(6)(b)(i) (determination of application for renewal of personal licence), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”. 25
- (5) In section 124(4)(b) (convictions coming to light after grant or renewal of personal licence), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (6) In section 167(5)(b) (review of premises licence following closure order), for “necessary” substitute “appropriate”.
- (7) The amendment made by subsection (2) of this section applies in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section. 30
- (8) The amendments made by subsections (3) to (5) of this section apply in relation to applications relating to personal licences that are made on or after the commencement of this section. 35
- (9) The amendment made by subsection (6) of this section applies in relation to notices under section 165(4) of the Licensing Act 2003 (closure orders) that are received by a licensing authority on or after the commencement of this section.

Temporary event notices

112 Temporary event notices: who may make an objection

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (13).
- (2) After section 99, insert –
 - “99A Meaning of “relevant person”** 5
 - In this Part references to a “relevant person”, in relation to any premises, are references to the following –
 - (a) the chief officer of police for any police area in which the premises are situated,
 - (b) the local authority by which statutory functions are exercisable in any area in which the premises are situated in relation to minimising or preventing the risk of pollution of the environment or of harm to human health.”. 10
- (3) In the cross-heading before section 104, for “Police objections” substitute “Objections”. 15
- (4) In the title to section 104 (objection to notice), for “the police” substitute “a relevant person”.
- (5) In section 104 (objection to notice), for subsection (2) substitute –
 - “(2) Where a relevant person who is given a temporary event notice is satisfied that allowing the premises to be used in accordance with the notice would undermine a licensing objective, the relevant person must give a notice stating the reasons for being so satisfied (an “objection notice”) –
 - (a) to the relevant licensing authority,
 - (b) to the premises user, and 25
 - (c) to every other relevant person.”.
- (6) In section 104(3) (timing for objection), for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”.
- (7) In section 104(4) (timing for objection), for “relevant chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”. 30
- (8) Omit section 104(5) (definition of “relevant chief officer of police”).
- (9) In section 105 (counter notice following objection) –
 - (a) in the title, omit “police”,
 - (b) in subsection (2)(a), for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”, 35
 - (c) in subsection (2)(b), for “the crime prevention objective” substitute “a licensing objective”,
 - (d) in subsection (3)(a), for “the relevant chief officer of police” substitute “each relevant person”, and
 - (e) in subsection (3)(b)(ii), for “the relevant chief officer of police” substitute “each relevant person”. 40
- (10) In section 106 (modification of notice following objection) –
 - (a) in the title, omit “police”,

- (b) in subsection (1), for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”,
 - (c) in subsection (2) –
 - (i) for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”, and
 - (ii) after “of the premises user” insert “and each other relevant person”,
 - (d) in subsection (4), for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”, and
 - (e) omit subsection (5).
- (11) In section 107(11) (counter notice where permitted limits exceeded), for the words following “that notice” substitute “to each relevant person”. 10
- (12) In section 194 (index of defined expressions), after the entry for the expression “relevant offence” insert –
“relevant person, in Part 5 section 99A”. 5
- (13) In Schedule 5 (appeals) – 15
 - (a) in paragraph 16(1)(b), for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”,
 - (b) in paragraph 16(3), for “chief officer of police” substitute “relevant person”,
 - (c) in paragraph 16(8), in the definition of “objection notice”, omit “and”,
 - (d) in paragraph 16(8), at the end of the definition of “relevant licensing authority” insert “; and –
“relevant person” has the meaning given in section 99A.”. 20
- (14) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section. 25

113 Temporary event notices: conditions

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (5).
- (2) In section 98(1) (meaning of “permitted temporary activity”), for paragraph (a) substitute –
“(a) it is carried out in accordance with – 30
 - (i) a notice given in accordance with section 100, and
 - (ii) any conditions imposed under section 106A, and”.

- (3) After section 106 insert –

“106A Conditions on standard temporary event notice following objection

- (1) This section applies where – 35
 - (a) a relevant person has given an objection notice under section 104(2) in respect of a standard temporary event notice,
 - (b) the objection notice has not been withdrawn, and
 - (c) the relevant licensing authority has decided under section 105 not to give a counter notice under that section. 40
- (2) The relevant licensing authority may impose one or more conditions on the standard temporary event notice if –
 - (a) the authority considers it appropriate for the promotion of the licensing objectives to do so,

-
- (b) the conditions are also imposed on a premises licence or club premises certificate that has effect in respect of the same premises, or any part of the same premises, as the temporary event notice, and
 - (c) the conditions would not be inconsistent with the carrying out of the licensable activities under the temporary event notice. 5
 - (3) Where the authority decides to impose one or more conditions under subsection (2) –
 - (a) the authority must give the premises user notice of the decision,
 - (b) the notice must be accompanied by a separate statement (the “statement of conditions”) which sets out the conditions that have been imposed on the temporary event notice, and 10
 - (c) a copy of the notice and statement of conditions must be given to each relevant party.
 - (4) The notice and statement of conditions under subsection (3) must – 15
 - (a) be in the prescribed form,
 - (b) be given to the premises user in the prescribed manner, and
 - (c) be given no later than 24 hours before the beginning of the event period specified in the temporary event notice.
 - (5) Where the premises are situated in the area of more than one licensing authority, the functions conferred on the relevant licensing authority by subsection (2) must be exercised by those authorities jointly.”. 20
 - (4) In section 109 (duty to keep and produce temporary event notice) –
 - (a) in the title, after “notice” insert “and statement of conditions”,
 - (b) in subsection (2)(a), after “notice” insert “, together with a copy of any statement of conditions given under section 106A(3) in respect of the notice”, 25
 - (c) in subsection (3)(a), after “notice” insert “, together with a copy of any statement of conditions given under section 106A(3) in respect of the notice”, 30
 - (d) in subsection (3)(b), for “notice is” substitute “notice and any statement of conditions are”,
 - (e) in subsection (5)(a), after “notice” insert “or any statement of conditions”,
 - (f) in subsection (5), after “produce the temporary event notice” insert “or statement of conditions”, 35
 - (g) in subsection (6), after “produce the temporary event notice” insert “or statement of conditions”, and
 - (h) in subsection (8), after “notice” insert “or statement of conditions”.
 - (5) In section 110 (theft, loss, etc. of temporary event notice) – 40
 - (a) in the title, after “notice” insert “or statement of conditions”,
 - (b) after subsection (1) insert –
 - “(1A) Where a statement of conditions that is given under section 106A(3) is lost, stolen, damaged or destroyed, the premises user may apply to the licensing authority which gave the statement for a copy of the statement.”, 45
 - (c) in subsection (4), after “copy of the notice” insert “or statement”,
 - (d) in subsection (4)(a), after “notice” insert “or statement”,

- (e) in subsection (5), after “notice” insert “or statement”, and
 - (f) in subsection (6), after “notice” insert “or statement”.
- (6) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section.

114 Temporary event notices: late notices 5

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (12).
- (2) In section 98(2) (meaning of “permitted temporary activity”), for “sections 102 (acknowledgement of notice) and 104(1) (notification of police)” substitute “section 102 (acknowledgement of notice)”.
- (3) In section 100 (temporary event notice) – 10
 - (a) in subsection (7), for paragraph (a) substitute –
“(a) must be given in accordance with section 100A, and”,
and
 - (b) in subsection (7)(b), after “fee” insert “when it is given by the premises user to the relevant licensing authority.”. 15

- (4) After section 100 insert –

“100A Standard and late temporary event notices

- (1) For the purposes of section 100(7)(a), a temporary event notice must be given in accordance with –
 - (a) subsection (2), in which case the notice is a “standard temporary event notice”, or 20
 - (b) subsection (3), in which case the notice is a “late temporary event notice”.
- (2) A temporary event notice is given in accordance with this subsection if, no later than ten working days before the day on which the event period begins – 25
 - (a) it is given to the relevant licensing authority by means of a relevant electronic facility, or
 - (b) it is given to the relevant licensing authority (otherwise than by means of a relevant electronic facility) and to each relevant person. 30
- (3) A temporary event notice is given in accordance with this subsection if –
 - (a) it is given to the relevant licensing authority by means of a relevant electronic facility no later than five working days, but no earlier than nine working days, before the day the event period begins, or 35
 - (b) both of the following are satisfied –
 - (i) it is given to the relevant licensing authority (otherwise than by means of a relevant electronic facility) and to each relevant person no later than five working days before the day on which the event period begins; 40
 - (ii) it is given to at least one of those persons no earlier than nine working days before the day on which that event period begins. 45

- (4) Where a temporary event notice (the “original notice”) is given by the premises user to the relevant licensing authority by means of a relevant electronic facility as referred to in subsection (2)(a) or (3)(a) –
- (a) the licensing authority must give a copy of the original notice to each relevant person no later than the end of the first working day after the day on which the original notice was given to the authority, and 5
 - (b) for the purposes of this Act, the copy is to be treated as if it were the original notice.
- (5) In this section “event period” in relation to a temporary event notice means the event period specified in the notice.” 10
- (5) In section 102 (acknowledgement of notice), for subsection (3) substitute –
- “(3) Subsection (1) does not apply where, before the time by which acknowledgement of the receipt of the notice must be given in accordance with that subsection, a counter notice has been given to the premises user under –
- (a) where the counter notice is in respect of a late temporary event notice, section 104A, or
 - (b) where the counter notice is in respect of a standard temporary event notice or a late temporary event notice, section 107.”. 15
- (6) In section 104 (objection to notice) –
- (a) omit subsections (1) and (1A), and
 - (b) in subsection (3), for “a copy of the temporary event notice under subsection (1) or (1A)” substitute “the temporary event notice”. 20
- (7) After section 104 insert – 25
- “104A Counter notice following objection to late notice**
- (1) Where an objection notice is given under section 104(2) in respect of a late temporary event notice, the relevant licensing authority must give the premises user a counter notice under this section.
 - (2) The counter notice must – 30
 - (a) be in the prescribed form, and
 - (b) be given to the premises user in the prescribed manner.
 - (3) The relevant licensing authority must, no later than 24 hours before the beginning of the event period specified in the temporary event notice –
 - (a) give the counter notice to the premises user, and
 - (b) give a copy of the counter notice to each relevant person.”. 35
- (8) In section 105 (counter notice following objection) –
- (a) in the title, after “objection” insert “to standard temporary event notice”,
 - (b) in subsection (1), for “in respect of a” substitute “under section 104(2) in respect of a standard”, and
 - (c) omit subsection (7). 40
- (9) In section 106(1) (modification of notice following objection) –
- (a) in the title, for “notice” substitute “standard temporary event notice”,

(b)	in subsection (1), for “in respect of a” substitute “under section 104(2) in respect of a standard”, and	
(c)	in subsection (2), for “the notice returned to the premises user under section 102” substitute “it”.	
(10)	In section 107 (counter notice where permitted limits exceeded) –	5
(a)	in subsection (2), for paragraph (b) substitute –	
	“(b) has already given at least –	
	(i) 50 temporary event notices, or	
	(ii) ten late temporary event notices,	
	in respect of event periods wholly or partly within the same year as the event period specified in notice A.”,	10
	and	
(b)	in subsection (3), for paragraph (b) substitute –	
	“(b) has already given at least –	
	(i) five temporary event notices, or	15
	(ii) two late temporary event notices,	
	in respect of event periods wholly or partly within the same year as the event period specified in notice A.”.	
(11)	In section 194 (index of defined expressions) –	
(a)	after the entry for the expression “late night refreshment” insert –	20
	“late temporary event notice..... section 100A(1)(b)”, and	
(b)	after the entry for the expression “secretary, in Part 4” insert –	
	“standard temporary event notice..... section 100A(1)(a)”.	25
(12)	In paragraph 16(1)(a) of Schedule 5 (appeals), after “a” insert “standard”.	
(13)	The amendments made by this section apply in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section.	
115	Relaxation of time limits applying to temporary event notices	
(1)	The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) and (3).	30
(2)	In section 100 (temporary event notice) –	
(a)	in subsection (1), for “96 hours” substitute “168 hours”, and	
(b)	in subsection (5)(b), for “96 hours” substitute “168 hours”.	
(3)	In section 107(5) (counter notice where permitted limits exceeded), for “15 days” substitute “21 days”.	35
(4)	The amendments made by this section apply in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section.	
116	Temporary event notices: acknowledgment of notice	
(1)	In section 102 of the Licensing Act 2003 (acknowledgement of notice) –	
(a)	in subsection (1), for “(in duplicate) in accordance with this Part, it must acknowledge receipt of the notice by sending or delivering one notice” substitute “in accordance with this Part, it must give written acknowledgement of the receipt of the notice”, and	40

(b) omit subsection (2).

- (2) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section.

117 Temporary event notice: time for objection by police

- (1) In section 104(3) of the Licensing Act 2003 (objection to temporary event notice by police), for “second” substitute “third”. 5
- (2) The amendment made by this section applies in relation to temporary event notices that are given on or after the commencement of this section.

Underage sales

118 Persistently selling alcohol to children 10

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) In section 147A(8) (fine for persistently selling alcohol to children), for “£10,000” substitute “£20,000”.
- (3) In section 169A (closure notice for persistently selling alcohol to children) – 15
- (a) in subsection (2)(a), for “for a period not exceeding 48 hours” substitute “, for the period specified in the notice,”, and
- (b) in subsection (4), for “not more than 48 hours” substitute “at least 48 hours but not more than 336 hours”.
- (4) The amendment made by subsection (2) of this section applies in relation to offences that are committed on or after the commencement of that subsection. 20
- (5) The amendments made by subsection (3) of this section apply in relation to closure notices that are given on or after the commencement of that subsection in relation to offences committed before, on or after that commencement.

Early morning alcohol restriction orders

119 Early morning alcohol restriction orders 25

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) In section 7 (exercise and delegation of functions), in subsection (2), after paragraph (a) (but before the final “or”) insert – 30
- “(aa) the functions of making, and varying or revoking, an order under section 172A (early morning alcohol restriction order),”.
- (3) For sections 172A to 172E (early morning alcohol restriction order), as inserted by section 55 of the Crime and Security Act 2010, substitute –

“172A Power to make early morning alcohol restriction order

- (1) If a licensing authority considers it appropriate for the promotion of the licensing objectives, it may, subject as follows, make an order under this section. 35
- (2) An order under this section is an order providing that –

- (a) premises licences and club premises certificates granted by the authority, and temporary event notices given to the authority, do not have effect to the extent that they authorise the sale of alcohol during the period specified in the order, and
 - (b) club premises certificates granted by the authority do not have effect to the extent that they authorise the supply of alcohol by or on behalf of a club to, or to the order of, a member of the club during the period specified in the order. 5
 - (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a) and (b), the period that may be specified in the order must – 10
 - (a) begin no earlier than midnight, and
 - (b) end no later than 6am.
 - (4) It is immaterial for the purposes of an order under this section whether a premises licence or club premises certificate is granted, or a temporary event notice is given, before or after the order is made. 15
 - (5) An order under this section may provide that it is to apply –
 - (a) in relation to the same period of every day on which the order is to apply, or in relation to different periods of different days,
 - (b) every day or only on particular days (for example, particular days of the week or year), 20
 - (c) in relation to the whole or part of a licensing authority’s area, or
 - (d) for a limited or unlimited period.
 - (6) An order under this section must specify –
 - (a) the days on which it is to apply and the period of those days,
 - (b) the area in relation to which it is to apply, 25
 - (c) if it is to apply for a limited period, that period, and
 - (d) the date from which it is to apply.
 - (7) An order under this section must –
 - (a) be in the prescribed form, and
 - (b) have the prescribed content. 30
- 172B Procedural requirements for early morning alcohol restriction order**
- (1) A licensing authority proposing to make an order under section 172A must –
 - (a) advertise the proposed order in the prescribed manner, and
 - (b) hold a hearing to consider any relevant representations, unless the authority and each person who has made such representations agree that a hearing is unnecessary. 35
 - (2) In this section “relevant representations” means representations which –
 - (a) are about the likely effect of the making of the proposed order on the promotion of the licensing objectives, 40
 - (b) are made to the licensing authority by an affected person, a responsible authority or any other person,
 - (c) are made in the prescribed form and manner and within the prescribed period, 45
 - (d) have not been withdrawn, and

- (e) in the case of representations made by a person who is not a responsible authority, are not, in the opinion of the licensing authority, frivolous or vexatious.
- (3) In subsection (2)(b), “affected person” means –
- (a) the holder of the premises licence or club premises certificate in respect of affected premises, 5
 - (b) the premises user in relation to a temporary event notice in respect of affected premises,
 - (c) a person who has applied for a premises licence or club premises certificate in respect of affected premises (where the application has not been determined), and 10
 - (d) a person to whom a provisional statement has been issued in respect of affected premises.
- (4) In subsection (2)(b) and (e), “responsible authority” means –
- (a) the licensing authority and any other licensing authority in whose area part of any affected premises is situated, 15
 - (b) the chief officer of police for a police area any part of which is in the area specified in the order,
 - (c) the fire and rescue authority for an area any part of which is in the area specified in the order, 20
 - (d) the Primary Care Trust or Local Health Board for an area any part of which is in the area specified in the order,
 - (e) the local weights and measures authority for any such area,
 - (f) the enforcing authority within the meaning given by section 18 of the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974 for any such area, 25
 - (g) the local planning authority within the meaning given by the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 for any such area,
 - (h) the local authority by which statutory functions are exercisable in the area specified in the order in relation to minimising or preventing the risk of pollution of the environment or of harm to human health, 30
 - (i) a body which –
 - (i) represents those who, in relation to the area specified in the order, are responsible for, or interested in, matters relating to the protection of children from harm, and 35
 - (ii) is recognised by the licensing authority for the purposes of this section as being competent to advise on such matters,
 - (j) where affected premises are a vessel – 40
 - (i) a navigation authority (within the meaning given by section 221(1) of the Water Resources Act 1991) having functions in relation to the waters where the vessel is usually moored or berthed or any waters where it is navigated at a time when it is used for licensable activities to which the proposed order relates, 45
 - (ii) the Environment Agency,
 - (iii) the British Waterways Board, and
 - (iv) the Secretary of State, and
 - (k) a prescribed person.

(5) Where a licensing authority determines for the purposes of subsection (2)(e) that any representations are frivolous or vexatious, it must notify the person who made them of its reasons for its determination.

(6) In this section –

“affected premises”, in relation to a proposed order, means premises in respect of which it applies from the date specified in it; 5

“statutory function” means a function conferred by or under an enactment.

172C Making of early morning alcohol restriction order 10

(1) A licensing authority may not make an order under section 172A applying in relation to –

(a) an area not specified in the proposed order advertised under section 172B,

(b) a day not specified in that proposed order, or 15

(c) a period other than the period specified in that proposed order of any day so specified.

(2) After making an order under section 172A a licensing authority must publish it or otherwise make it available –

(a) in the prescribed form and manner, and 20

(b) within the prescribed period.

172D Variation and revocation of early morning alcohol restriction order

(1) A licensing authority may vary or revoke an order under section 172A.

(2) Sections 172B and 172C apply in relation to the variation or revocation of an order under section 172A as in relation to the making of such an order. 25

172E Exceptions from effect of early morning alcohol restriction order

(1) An order under section 172A does not apply in prescribed cases or circumstances.

(2) The cases referred to in subsection (1) may in particular be defined by reference to – 30

(a) particular kinds of premises, or

(b) particular days.

(3) An order under section 172A is subject to an order under section 172 (whether made before or afterwards), unless and to the extent that the order under section 172 provides otherwise.”. 35

(4) Section 55 of the Crime and Security Act 2010 (power to restrict sale and supply of alcohol) is repealed.

Suspension for failure to pay annual fees

120 Suspension of licence or certificate for failing to pay annual fee 40

(1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (5).

(2) In section 26(2) (period of validity of premises licence), after “section 52” insert “or 55A”.

(3) After section 55 (annual fee for premises licence) insert –

“55A Suspension of premises licence for failing to pay annual fee

- | | |
|---|----|
| (1) A licensing authority must suspend a premises licence if the holder of the licence has failed to pay the authority an annual fee that has become due under section 55(2). | 5 |
| (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if – | |
| (a) either – | |
| (i) the holder’s failure to pay the fee at the time it became due was because of an administrative error (whether made by the holder, the authority or anyone else), or | 10 |
| (ii) before or at the time the fee became due, the holder notified the authority in writing that the holder disputed liability for, or the amount of, the fee, and | 15 |
| (b) the grace period for payment of the fee has not expired (see subsection (8)). | |
| (3) If a licensing authority suspends a premises licence under subsection (1), the authority must give the holder of the licence a notice to that effect, specifying the day the suspension takes effect. | 20 |
| (4) A day specified in a notice under subsection (3) must be at least two working days after the day the authority gives the notice. | |
| (5) If the holder of the licence pays the annual fee, the licensing authority must give the holder written acknowledgement of receipt of the fee. | |
| (6) The acknowledgement of receipt under subsection (5) must – | 25 |
| (a) specify the day the authority received the fee (the “receipt day”), and | |
| (b) be given to the holder as soon as is reasonably practicable but in any event – | |
| (i) if the receipt day was a working day, before the end of the first working day after the receipt day, | 30 |
| (ii) otherwise, before the end of the second working day after the receipt day. | |
| (7) A suspension of a premises licence under subsection (1) – | |
| (a) takes effect on the day specified in the notice under subsection (3), and | 35 |
| (b) ceases to have effect on the receipt day, as specified in the acknowledgement of receipt under subsection (5). | |
| (8) In this section, the “grace period” for payment of a fee is the period of 21 days, beginning on the day after the day the fee became due.”. | 40 |
| (4) In section 80(2) (period of validity of club premises certificate), after “section 88” insert “or 92A”. | |

- (5) After section 92 (annual fee for club premises certificate) insert –
- “92A Suspension of club premises certificate for failing to pay annual fee**
- (1) A licensing authority must suspend a club premises certificate if the holder of the certificate has failed to pay the authority an annual fee that has become due under section 92(2). 5
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if –
- (a) either –
- (i) the holder’s failure to pay the fee at the time it became due was because of an administrative error (whether made by the holder, the authority or anyone else), or 10
- (ii) before or at the time the fee became due, the holder notified the authority in writing that the holder disputed liability for, or the amount of, the fee, and
- (b) the grace period for payment of the fee has not expired (see subsection (8)). 15
- (3) If a licensing authority suspends a club premises certificate under subsection (1), the authority must give the holder of the certificate a notice to that effect, specifying the day the suspension takes effect.
- (4) A day specified in a notice under subsection (3) must be at least 2 working days after the day the authority gives the notice. 20
- (5) If the holder of the certificate pays the annual fee, the licensing authority must give the holder written acknowledgement of receipt of the fee.
- (6) The acknowledgement of receipt under subsection (5) must –
- (a) specify the day the authority received the fee (the “receipt day”), and 25
- (b) be given to the holder as soon as is reasonably practicable but in any event –
- (i) if the receipt day was a working day, before the end of the first working day after the receipt day, 30
- (ii) otherwise, before the end of the second working day after the receipt day.
- (7) A suspension of a club premises certificate under subsection (1) –
- (a) takes effect on the day specified in the notice under subsection (3), and 35
- (b) ceases to have effect on the receipt day, as specified in the acknowledgement of receipt under subsection (5).
- (8) In this section, the “grace period” for payment of a fee is the period of 21 days, beginning on the day after the day the fee became due.”.
- (6) The amendments made by this section apply in relation to premises licences and club premises certificates in relation to which annual fees become due on or after the commencement of this section. 40

Miscellaneous

121 Licensing policy statements

- (1) Section 5 of the Licensing Act 2003 (statement of licensing policy) is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (7).
- (2) In subsection (1) – 5
 - (a) for “three” substitute “five”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b) omit “(a “licensing statement”)”.
- (3) Omit subsection (2).
- (4) In subsection (3), for “three” substitute “five”.
- (5) In subsection (4) – 10
 - (a) for “three” substitute “five”, and
 - (b) after “policy” insert “in respect of that period”.
- (6) After subsection (6) insert –
 - “(6A) Without prejudice to subsection (4), a licensing authority may replace its policy in respect of a period, with effect from any date during that period, by – 15
 - (a) determining its policy with respect to the exercise of its licensing functions in respect of a period of five years beginning with that date, and
 - (b) publishing a statement of that policy before that date. 20
 - (6B) Subsection (3) applies in relation to any determination under subsection (6A) as it applies in relation to a determination under subsection (1).
 - (6C) A licensing statement must specify the five year period to which it relates.” 25
- (7) After subsection (7) insert –
 - “(8) In this section –
 - “five year period”, in relation to a licensing authority, means –
 - (a) if paragraph (b) does not apply, the period of five years ending with 6 January 2016, and each subsequent period of five years, or 30
 - (b) if a licensing authority has published a licensing statement under subsection (6A), the period of five years to which the most recently published such statement relates, and each subsequent period of five years; 35
 - “licensing statement” means a statement published under subsection (1)(b) or (6A)(b).”
- (8) Any policy determined, and any licensing policy statement published, under section 5(1) of the Licensing Act 2003 in respect of the period of three years beginning with 7 January 2011 is, on and after the commencement of this subsection, to be treated for all purposes as if – 40
 - (a) it had been determined and published under that section (as amended by this section) in respect of the period of five years beginning with 7 January 2011, and

- (b) it specified the five year period to which it relates.

122 Personal licences: relevant offences

- (1) Schedule 4 to the Licensing Act 2003 (personal licence: relevant offences) is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (4).
- (2) In paragraph 14 (offences under the Road Traffic Act 1988), after paragraph (c) insert – 5
“(d) section 6(6) (failing to co-operate with a preliminary test).”.
- (3) The second paragraph 22 is renumbered as paragraph 22A.
- (4) After paragraph 23 insert – 10
“24 An offence under section 1 of the Criminal Attempts Act 1981 of attempting to commit an offence that is a relevant offence.
25 An offence under section 1 of the Criminal Law Act 1977 of conspiracy to commit an offence that is a relevant offence.
26 The offence at common law of conspiracy to defraud.”. 15
- (5) The amendments made by this section apply on and after the commencement of this section in relation to –
(a) personal licences that are granted or renewed before, on or after the commencement of this section, and
(b) offences committed before, on or after that commencement. 20

Review

123 Review of effect of amendments on licensing scheme

- (1) As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of the review period, the Secretary of State must –
(a) carry out a review of the following provisions of this Chapter – 25
(i) section 103 (licensing authorities as responsible authorities),
(ii) section 104 (Primary Care Trusts and Local Health Boards as responsible authorities),
(iii) section 105 (premises licences: who may make relevant representations), 30
(iv) section 106 (premises licenses: who may apply for review),
(v) section 107 (club premises certificates: who may make relevant representations),
(vi) section 108 (club premises certificates: who may apply for review), 35
(vii) section 109 (reducing the burden: premises licences),
(viii) section 110 (reducing the burden: club premises certificates),
(ix) section 111 (reducing the burden: other situations),
(x) section 112 (temporary event notices: who may make an objection), 40
(xi) section 113 (temporary event notices: conditions),

- (xii) section 117 (temporary event notices: time for objection by police),
 - (xiii) section 119 (early morning alcohol restriction orders),
 - (xiv) section 120 (suspension of licence or certificate for failing to pay annual fee), 5
 - (xv) section 122 (personal licences: relevant offences), and
 - (b) set out the conclusions of the review in a report.
- (2) In particular, the review must assess the effect of the amendments made by those sections on the scheme established by the Licensing Act 2003.
- (3) The Secretary of State must lay a copy of the report before Parliament. 10
- (4) In this section, “review period” means the period of five years beginning with—
- (a) if all of those sections commence on the same day, that day, and
 - (b) otherwise, the first day on which all of those sections have commenced.

CHAPTER 2

15

LATE NIGHT LEVY

Application of late night levy requirement in licensing authority’s area

124 Late night levy requirement

- (1) In this Chapter, “the late night levy requirement” means a requirement to pay the late night levy in accordance with this Chapter. 20
- (2) A licensing authority may decide that the late night levy requirement is to apply in its area.
- (3) In making a decision under subsection (2) a licensing authority must consider—
- (a) the costs of policing and other arrangements for the reduction or prevention of crime and disorder, in connection with the supply of alcohol between midnight and 6 am, and
 - (b) having regard to those costs, the desirability of raising revenue to be applied in accordance with section 130. 25
- (4) A licensing authority may not decide that the late night levy requirement is to apply in part only of its area. 30
- (5) This section is subject to section 131.

Liability to pay late night levy

125 “Relevant late night authorisation” and related definitions

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Chapter. 35
- (2) “Relevant late night authorisation”, in relation to a licensing authority and a levy year, means a premises licence or club premises certificate which—
- (a) is granted by the authority, and

-
- (b) authorises the supply of alcohol at a time or times during the late night supply period on one or more days in the related payment year.
- (3) The “late night supply period” in relation to a licensing authority means the period of the day decided by the authority under section 131 or 132.
- (4) A late night supply period must – 5
(a) begin at or after midnight, and
(b) end at or before 6 am.
- (5) The late night supply period determined by a licensing authority for a levy year must be the same – 10
(a) for each payment year beginning during the levy year, and
(b) throughout each such payment year.
- (6) Regulations must make provision as to how payment years are to be determined in relation to holders of premises licences or club premises certificates.
- (7) Regulations under subsection (6) may, in particular – 15
(a) provide for a holder’s payment year to be determined by reference to the period in respect of which the holder is liable to pay an annual fee under section 55(2) or 92(2) of the Licensing Act 2003, or
(b) confer functions or a discretion on licensing authorities in relation to authorisations granted by them. 20
- (8) Regulations under subsection (6) which provide for licensing authorities to determine payment years must require an authority to decide how the payment years are to be determined at the time the authority decides under section 124(2) that the late night levy requirement is to apply in its area.
- (9) For the purposes of this section, a payment year is related to a levy year if it begins at the same time as, or during, the levy year. 25
- 126 Liability to pay late night levy**
- (1) Where the late night levy requirement applies in the area of a licensing authority, the holder of a relevant late night authorisation must pay a levy (“the late night levy”) to the authority in respect of that authorisation for each levy year, in accordance with this Chapter. 30
- (2) But a holder of a relevant late night authorisation who falls within an applicable exemption category is not liable to pay the late night levy in respect of that authorisation for the levy year.
- (3) For this purpose, “applicable exemption category”, in relation to a levy year, means a permitted exemption category that the licensing authority has decided under section 131 or 132 is to apply in its area for the levy year. 35
- 127 Amount of late night levy**
- (1) For any levy year, the amount of the levy is – 40
(a) the amount prescribed by regulations, or
(b) the amount calculated in accordance with regulations.
- (2) But in the case of the holder of a relevant late night authorisation who falls within an applicable reduction category, the amount of the late night levy

payable in respect of the authorisation is the reduced amount that applies in relation to that category (see section 134(4)).

- (3) For this purpose “applicable reduction category”, in relation to a levy year, means a permitted reduction category that the licensing authority has decided under section 131 or 132 is to apply in its area for the levy year. 5
- (4) Subject to subsection (2), regulations under subsection (1) must provide for the amount of the late night levy, or the manner in which it is to be calculated, to be the same for all persons liable to pay the levy in respect of an authorisation for the levy year.

Administration of late night levy 10

128 Payment and administration of the levy

- (1) Regulations –
 (a) must make provision as to collection and administration, and
 (b) may make provision as to enforcement,
 of the late night levy. 15
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) must make provision as to the time or times for payment of the levy to a licensing authority by holders of relevant late night authorisations.
- (3) Provision made by virtue of subsection (2) may in particular provide for any such time or times to be determined by reference to the holders’ payment years. 20
- (4) Regulations under subsection (1) may make provision for adjustments to be made in cases where –
 (a) a relevant late night authorisation ceases to be such an authorisation during the holder’s payment year; 25
 (b) a premises licence or club premises certificate becomes a relevant late night authorisation during the holder’s payment year;
 (c) an order under section 172A of that Act (early morning restriction orders) precludes the supply of alcohol by virtue of the relevant late night authorisation at all the times during the applicable late night supply period when it would otherwise have been permitted by virtue of the authorisation; 30
- including in cases where the change occurs after the end of the levy year.
- (5) Any payment of the late night levy which is owed to a licensing authority under this Chapter may be recovered as a debt due to the authority. 35
- (6) The following provisions of the Licensing Act 2003 apply for the purposes of this Chapter –
 (a) section 55A (suspension of premises licence for failure to pay annual fee);
 (b) section 92A (suspension of club premises certificate for failure to pay annual fee), 40

but as if a reference to an annual fee, or to the annual fee owed under section 55(2) or 92(2), were a reference to the late night levy, or to the amount of the late night levy owed under this Chapter.

- (7) Provision that may be made by regulations under this section includes provision conferring functions or a discretion on licensing authorities.

129 Net amount of levy payments

- (1) In this Chapter “the net amount of levy payments” of a licensing authority in respect of any period means the amount, calculated in accordance with regulations, which represents – 5
- (a) the aggregate amount of payments to the authority in respect of the levy that are attributable to that period, less
 - (b) the aggregate amount of expenses of the authority attributable to that period that are permitted deductions under regulations under subsection (2)(a). 10
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1) –
- (a) must prescribe descriptions of expenses which, if incurred by the licensing authority in connection with the collection, administration or enforcement of the late night levy for any period, may be deducted for the purposes of calculating the net amount of levy payments for the period, 15
 - (b) may make provision for determining the amounts to be taken into account in calculating the net amount of levy payments,
 - (c) may make provision for determining the period to which a payment or deduction is attributable. 20
- (3) A licensing authority must publish the following, in respect of each levy year –
- (a) before the beginning of the year, a statement of its estimate of the amount of deductions permitted under regulations under subsection (2)(a) to be made in respect of the year; 25
 - (b) after the end of the year, a statement of the net amount of levy payments for the year, showing in particular the amounts mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) attributable to the year.
- (4) It is for the licensing authority to determine the manner in which any statement under subsection (3) is to be published. 30

Application of levy payments

130 Application of net amount of levy payments

- (1) The net amount of levy payments for any levy year must be applied as follows.
- (2) The licensing authority –
- (a) must pay the specified proportion of that amount to the relevant local policing body, and 35
 - (b) must apply the remainder of that amount in accordance with regulations.
- (3) In subsection (2)(a), “specified proportion” means the proportion determined for the levy year under section 131(1)(b) or 132(1)(d). 40
- (4) The specified proportion must be not less than 70 per cent.
- (5) Regulations may amend subsection (4) by specifying a different proportion in place of the proportion for the time being specified in that subsection.

- (6) Regulations may make provision –
- (a) as to the time or times at which payments are to be made by the licensing authority under subsection (2);
 - (b) for adjustments of payments in cases where payments or repayments are made in respect of the levy after the end of the levy year. 5
- (7) Regulations under this section may make provision conferring a function or a discretion on a licensing authority.

Late night levy requirement: further provision

131 Introduction of late night levy requirement

- (1) Where a licensing authority decides under section 124 that the late night levy requirement is to apply in its area, it must also decide – 10
- (a) the date on which the late night levy requirement is first to apply, and
 - (b) for the first levy year and, subject to section 132, each subsequent levy year –
 - (i) the late night supply period; 15
 - (ii) the permitted exemption categories (if any) that are to apply in its area;
 - (iii) the permitted reduction categories (if any) that are to apply in its area;
 - (iv) the proportion of the net amount of levy payments that is to be paid to the relevant local policing body under section 130. 20
- (2) Subsection (1)(b)(i) is subject to section 125(4) and (5).
- (3) Subsection (1)(b)(iv) is subject to section 130(4).
- (4) Regulations under section 133 apply in relation to any decision of a licensing authority under section 124 or this section. 25

132 Amendment of late night levy requirement

- (1) Where the late night levy requirement applies in the area of a licensing authority under section 124, the authority may decide –
- (a) that the requirement is to cease to apply in the area;
 - (b) that a different late night supply period is to apply; 30
 - (c) that different permitted exemption categories or permitted reduction categories are to apply in the area;
 - (d) that a different proportion of the net amount of levy payments is to be paid to the relevant local policing body.
- (2) Subsection (1)(b) is subject to section 125(4) and (5). 35
- (3) Subsection (1)(d) is subject to section 130(4).
- (4) Where –
- (a) regulations under section 134 alter the permitted exemption categories or permitted reduction categories, and
 - (b) by virtue of the regulations any category that applies in the area of a licensing authority by virtue of section 131(1)(b) or (iii) ceases to be a permitted exemption category or permitted reduction category, 40

the licensing authority must exercise its power under subsection (1)(c) so as to secure that all the categories that apply in its area in respect of future levy periods are permitted exemption categories or permitted reduction categories.

- (5) Where –
- (a) regulations under subsection (5) of section 130 amend subsection (4) of that section, and 5
 - (b) by virtue of the regulations the proportion of the net amount of levy payments to be paid to the relevant local policing body ceases to satisfy section 130(4),
- the licensing authority must exercise its power under subsection (1)(d) so as to secure that the proportion of the net amount of levy payments to be paid to the relevant local policing body in respect of future levy years satisfies that provision. 10
- (6) Any decision made under subsection (1) may take effect only –
- (a) in the case of a decision under paragraph (a), at the end of a levy period, 15
 - (b) in the case of decision under paragraph (b), (c) or (d), in respect of future levy periods.
- (7) Regulations under section 133 apply in relation to any decision of a licensing authority under this section.

133 Introduction or variation of late night levy requirement: procedure 20

- (1) Regulations must make provision as to the procedure to be followed by a licensing authority in relation to any proposal for –
- (a) a decision under section 124(2) that the late night levy requirement is to apply in the area of the licensing authority (and any related decision under section 131(1)); 25
 - (b) a decision under section 132(1)(a) that the late night levy is to cease to apply in the area of the licensing authority;
 - (c) a decision under section 132(1)(b), (c) or (d).
- (2) Regulations under this section must, in particular –
- (a) require the licensing authority, where it proposes to make any decision mentioned in subsection (1), to consult the following about the proposal – 30
 - (i) the relevant local policing body;
 - (ii) the relevant chief officer of police;
 - (iii) holders of relevant late night authorisations; 35
 - (iv) any other persons prescribed by the regulations;
 - (b) make provision requiring the licensing authority to publish notice of any decision mentioned in subsection (1) (and of related decisions);
 - (c) in the case of a decision under section 124(2), make provision –
 - (i) enabling any relevant late night authorisation to be varied under section 34, 41A, 84 or 86A of the Licensing Act 2003, on the application of the holder, so as to cease to be a relevant late night authorisation before the beginning of the first levy year, and 40
 - (ii) for no fee to be payable in respect of any such application to the extent that it relates to such a variation. 45

- (3) In the case of a proposal that the late night levy requirement should apply to the area of a licensing authority, the consultation about the proposal required under subsection (2)(a) must include consultation about the matters to be decided under section 131(1).
- (4) Regulations under this section may specify matters of which the licensing authority must be satisfied before deciding under section 124(2) that the late night levy requirement is to apply in its area. 5
- (5) In subsection (2)(c), “relevant late night authorisation” includes a premises licence or club premises certificate which would be a relevant late night authorisation if the licensing authority were to make the decisions in subsection (1)(a) in accordance with the proposal. 10

134 Permitted exemption and reduction categories

- (1) Regulations may prescribe –
- (a) categories of holders of relevant late night authorisations in relation to whom, if a licensing authority so decides, the requirement to pay the late night levy is not to apply (“permitted exemption categories”); 15
 - (b) categories of holders of relevant late night authorisations in relation to whom, if a licensing authority so decides, a reduced amount of the levy is to apply (“permitted reduction categories”).
- (2) References in subsection (1) to a decision of a licensing authority are to a decision by the authority under section 131(1)(b) or (c) or 132(1)(c) that the category in question is to apply in its area. 20
- (3) Without prejudice to section 135(3), categories of holders may be prescribed for this purpose by reference, in particular, to –
- (a) participation in arrangements of particular descriptions; 25
 - (b) particular descriptions of premises in respect of which authorisations are held.
- (4) Regulations under subsection (1) which prescribe permitted reduction categories must also prescribe, in relation to each such category –
- (a) what the reduced amount of the levy is, or 30
 - (b) the manner in which the reduced amount of the levy is to be calculated, and must provide for the reduced amount of the late night levy, or the manner in which it is to be calculated, to be the same for all persons liable to pay the late night levy in respect of an authorisation in that category for a levy year.

135 Late night levy: regulations 35

- (1) Any power to make regulations under this Chapter is exercisable by the Secretary of State, but may be exercised only with consent of Treasury.
- (2) Regulations may amend any provision made by or under an Act so far as necessary or expedient in consequence of any provision made by or under this Chapter. 40
- (3) Any regulations under this Chapter may –
- (a) make different provision for different cases;
 - (b) make provision subject to exceptions;

- (c) make supplemental, incidental, consequential and transitional provision.
- (4) Subsection (3) is subject to section 127(4) and 134(4).

136 Interpretation

In this Chapter –	5
“club premises certificate” has the same meaning as in the Licensing Act 2003 (see section 60 of that Act);	
“late night levy” means a levy payable under section 126(1);	
“the late night levy requirement” has the meaning given by section 124;	
“late night supply period”, has the meaning given by section 125;	10
“levy year”, in relation to a licensing authority, means a period of one year, beginning with the date specified under section 131(1)(a) or an anniversary of that date, for which the late night levy requirement applies in the area of the authority;	
“licensing authority” means an authority which is a licensing authority within the meaning of the Licensing Act 2003 (see section 3 of that Act);	15
“net amount of levy payments” has the meaning given by section 128;	
“payment year”, in relation to the holder of a relevant late night authorisation, means a year to which any payment of the late night levy by the holder in respect of the authorisation relates;	20
“permitted exemption category” and “permitted reduction category” have the meanings given by section 134;	
“premises licence” has the same meaning as in the Licensing Act 2003 (see section 11 of that Act);	
“relevant late night authorisation” has the meaning given by section 125;	25
“relevant chief officer of police”, in relation to a licensing authority, means the chief officer of police for the police area which comprises or includes the area of the licensing authority;	
“relevant local policing body”, in relation to a licensing authority, means the local policing body for the police area which comprises or includes the area of the licensing authority;	30
“supply of alcohol” has the same meaning as in Part 3 of the Licensing Act 2003 (see section 14 of that Act).	

137 Crown application

(1) This Chapter binds the Crown and has effect in relation to any premises licence, or club premises certificate, which relates to land in which there is –	35
(a) an interest belonging to Her Majesty in right of the Crown,	
(b) an interest belonging to a government department, or	
(c) an interest held in trust for Her Majesty for the purposes of such a department.	40
(2) This Chapter also applies in relation to any premises licence, or club premises certificate, which relates to –	
(a) land which is vested in, but not occupied by, Her Majesty in right of the Duchy of Lancaster, and	
(b) land which is vested in, but not occupied by, the possessor for the time being of the Duchy of Cornwall.	45

- (3) Provision made by or under this Chapter applies to persons in the public service of the Crown as it applies to other persons.
- (4) But nothing in this Chapter affects Her Majesty in Her private capacity.

138 Amendments of the Licensing Act 2003

- (1) The Licensing Act 2003 is amended as follows. 5
- (2) In section 55 (fees: premises licences), after subsection (1) insert –
 - “(1A) Subsection (1) is subject to regulations under section 133(2)(c)(ii) of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (exemption from fees for variation applications prior to introduction of late night levy).”
- (3) In section 92 (fees: club premises certificates), after subsection (1) insert – 10
 - “(1A) Subsection (1) is subject to regulations under section 133(2)(c)(ii) of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (exemption from fees for variation applications prior to introduction of late night levy).”

PART 3

PARLIAMENT SQUARE GARDEN AND SURROUNDING AREA 15

Repeal of SOCPA 2005 provisions

139 Demonstrations in vicinity of Parliament: repeal of SOCPA 2005 provisions

- (1) Sections 132 to 138 of the Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (which regulate demonstrations and use of loudspeakers in the vicinity of Parliament) are repealed. 20
- (2) The public assemblies in relation to which section 14 of the Public Order Act 1986 applies, as a consequence of the repeal of section 132(6) of the Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005, include public assemblies which started, or were being organised, before this section comes into force.

Controls on activities in Parliament Square Garden and adjoining pavements 25

140 Controlled area of Parliament Square

- (1) For the purposes of this Part, the “controlled area of Parliament Square” means the area of land that is comprised in –
 - (a) the central garden of Parliament Square, and
 - (b) the footways that immediately adjoin the central garden of Parliament Square. 30
- (2) In subsection (1) –
 - “the central garden of Parliament Square” means the site in Parliament Square on which the Minister of Works was authorised by the Parliament Square (Improvements) Act 1949 to lay out the garden referred to in that Act as “the new central garden”; 35
 - “footway” has the same meaning as in the Highways Act 1980 (see section 329(1) of that Act).

141 Prohibited activities in controlled area of Parliament Square

- (1) A constable or authorised officer who has reasonable grounds for believing that a person is doing, or is about to do, a prohibited activity may direct the person –
 - (a) to cease doing that activity, or 5
 - (b) (as the case may be) not to start doing that activity.
- (2) For the purposes of this Part, a “prohibited activity” is any of the following –
 - (a) operating any amplified noise equipment in the controlled area of Parliament Square;
 - (b) erecting or keeping erected in the controlled area of Parliament Square –
 - (i) any tent, or
 - (ii) any other structure that is designed, or adapted, (solely or mainly) for the purpose of facilitating sleeping or staying in a place for any period; 10
 - (c) using any tent or other such structure in the controlled area of Parliament Square for the purpose of sleeping or staying in that area;
 - (d) placing or keeping in place in the controlled area of Parliament Square any sleeping equipment with a view to its use (whether or not by the person placing it or keeping it in place) for the purpose of sleeping overnight in that area; 15
 - (e) using any sleeping equipment in the controlled area of Parliament Square for the purpose of sleeping overnight in that area.
- (3) But an activity is not to be treated as a “prohibited activity” within subsection (2) if it is done –
 - (a) for police, fire and rescue authority or ambulance purposes,
 - (b) by or on behalf of a relevant authority, or
 - (c) by a person so far as authorised under section 145 to do it (authorisation for operation of amplified noise equipment). 25
- (4) In subsection (2)(a) “amplified noise equipment” means any device that is designed or adapted for amplifying sound, including (but not limited to) –
 - (a) loudspeakers, and
 - (b) loudhailers. 30
- (5) In subsection (3)(b) “relevant authority” means any of the following –
 - (a) a Minister of the Crown or a government department, 35
 - (b) the Greater London Authority, or
 - (c) Westminster City Council.
- (6) It is immaterial for the purposes of a prohibited activity –
 - (a) in the case of an activity within subsection (2)(b) or (c) of keeping a tent or similar structure erected or using a tent or similar structure, whether the tent or structure was first erected before or after the coming into force of this section; 40
 - (b) in the case of an activity within subsection (2)(d) or (e) of keeping in place any sleeping equipment or using any such equipment, whether the sleeping equipment was first placed before or after the coming into force of this section. 45

- (7) In this section “sleeping equipment” means any sleeping bag, mattress or other similar item designed, or adapted, (solely or mainly) for the purpose of facilitating sleeping in a place.
- (8) A person who fails without reasonable excuse to comply with a direction under subsection (1) commits an offence and is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale. 5

142 Directions under section 141: further provision

- (1) A direction requiring a person to cease doing a prohibited activity may include a direction that the person does not start doing that activity again after having ceased it. 10
- (2) A direction requiring a person not to start doing a prohibited activity continues in force until –
- (a) the end of such period beginning with the day on which the direction is given as may be specified by the constable or authorised officer giving the direction, or 15
- (b) if no such period is specified, the end of the period of 90 days beginning with the day on which the direction is given.
- (3) A period specified under subsection (2)(a) may not be longer than 90 days.
- (4) A direction may be given to a person to cease operating, or not to start operating, any amplified noise equipment only if it appears to the constable or authorised officer giving the direction that the following condition is met. 20
- (5) The condition is that the person is operating, or is about to operate, the equipment in such a manner as to produce sound that other persons in or in the vicinity of the controlled area of Parliament Square can hear or are likely to be able to hear. 25
- (6) A direction –
- (a) may be given orally,
- (b) may be given to any person individually or to two or more persons together, and
- (c) may be withdrawn or varied by the person who gave it. 30
- (7) In this section –
“amplified noise equipment” has the meaning given by section 141(4);
“direction” means a direction given under section 141(1).

143 Power to seize property

- (1) A constable or authorised officer may seize and retain a prohibited item that is on any land in the controlled area of Parliament Square if it appears to that constable or officer that the item is being, or has been, used in connection with the commission of an offence under section 141. 35
- (2) A constable may seize and retain a prohibited item that is on any land outside of the controlled area of Parliament Square if it appears to the constable that the item has been used in connection with the commission of an offence under section 141. 40
- (3) A “prohibited item” is any item of a kind mentioned in section 141(2).

- (4) The constable or authorised officer may use reasonable force, if necessary, in exercising a power of seizure under subsection (1) or (in the case of a constable) under subsection (2).
- (5) An item seized under this section must be returned to the person from whom it was seized –
 - (a) no later than the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the item was seized, or
 - (b) if proceedings are commenced against the person for an offence under section 141 before the return of the item under paragraph (a), at the conclusion of those proceedings.
- (6) If it is not possible to return an item under subsection (5) because the name or address of the person from whom it was seized is not known –
 - (a) the item may be returned to any other person appearing to have rights in the property who has come forward to claim it, or
 - (b) if there is no such person, the item may be disposed of or destroyed at any time after the end of the period of 90 days beginning with the day on which the item was seized.
- (7) Subsections (5)(b) and (6) do not apply if a court makes an order under section 144(1)(a) for the forfeiture of the item.
- (8) The references in subsections (1) and (2) to an item that is “on” any land include references to an item that is in the possession of a person who is on any such land.

144 Power of court on conviction

- (1) The court may do either or both of the following on the conviction of a person (“P”) of an offence under section 141 –
 - (a) make an order providing for the forfeiture of any item of a kind mentioned in subsection (2) of that section that was used in the commission of the offence;
 - (b) make such other order as the court considers appropriate for the purpose of preventing P from engaging in any prohibited activity in the controlled area of Parliament Square.
- (2) An order under subsection (1)(b) may (in particular) require P not to enter the controlled area of Parliament Square for such period as may be specified in the order.
- (3) Power of the court to make an order under this section is in addition to the court’s power to impose a fine under section 141(8).

145 Authorisation for operation of amplified noise equipment

- (1) The responsible authority for any land in the controlled area of Parliament Square may authorise a person in accordance with this section to operate on that land any amplified noise equipment (as defined by section 141(4)).
- (2) An application for authorisation must be made to the responsible authority by or on behalf of the person (or persons) seeking the authorisation.
- (3) The responsible authority may –

- (a) determine the form in which, and the manner in which, an application is to be made;
 - (b) specify the information to be supplied in connection with an application;
 - (c) require a fee to be paid for determining an application. 5
- (4) If an application is duly made to a responsible authority, the authority must –
- (a) determine the application, and
 - (b) give notice in writing to the applicant of the authority’s decision within the period of 21 days beginning with the day on which the authority receives the application. 10
- (5) The notice must specify –
- (a) the person (or persons) authorised (whether by name or description),
 - (b) the kind of amplified noise equipment to which the authorisation applies,
 - (c) the period to which the authorisation applies, and 15
 - (d) any conditions to which the authorisation is subject.
- (6) The responsible authority may at any time –
- (a) withdraw an authorisation given to a person under this section, or
 - (b) vary any condition to which an authorisation is subject.
- (7) Variation under subsection (6)(b) includes – 20
- (a) imposing a new condition,
 - (b) removing an existing condition, or
 - (c) altering any period to which a condition applies.
- (8) The exercise of a power under subsection (6) to withdraw an authorisation or to vary a condition is effected by the responsible authority giving notice in writing to the applicant. 25

146 Meaning of “authorised officer” and “responsible authority”

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Authorised officer”, in relation to any land in the controlled area of Parliament Square, means – 30
- (a) an employee of the responsible authority for that land who is authorised in writing by the authority for the purposes of this Part, and
 - (b) any other person who, under arrangements made with the responsible authority (whether by that or any other person), is so authorised for the purposes of this Part. 35
- (3) “Responsible authority”, in relation to any land in the controlled area of Parliament Square, means –
- (a) the Greater London Authority, for any land comprised in the central garden of Parliament Square (as defined by section 140(2)), and
 - (b) Westminster City Council, for any other land. 40

147 Effect of Part on byelaws

- (1) In section 385 of the Greater London Authority Act 1999 (byelaws), after

subsection (6) insert –

- “(6A) Byelaws under this section may not be made as respects Parliament Square Garden for the purpose of prohibiting a particular activity so far as that activity is a prohibited activity for the purposes of Part 3 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (see section 141(2) of that Act).” 5
- (2) Any byelaw made under section 385 of the Greater London Authority Act 1999 before the date on which section 141 above comes into force ceases to have effect on that date so far as the byelaw makes provision prohibiting, as respects the controlled area of Parliament Square, a particular activity that is a prohibited activity for the purposes of this Part. 10
- (3) Nothing in this Part restricts the making of any byelaw under section 235(1) of the Local Government Act 1972 (power of councils to make byelaws) for the purpose of prohibiting, as respects the controlled area of Parliament Square, a particular activity except so far as the activity is a prohibited activity for the purposes of this Part. 15

PART 4

MISCELLANEOUS

Seizure powers under byelaws

148 Enforcement of byelaws: powers of seizure etc 20

- (1) After section 237 of the Local Government Act 1972 (offences against byelaws) insert –

“237ZA Section 235 byelaws: powers of seizure etc

A byelaw made under section 235 may include provision for or in connection with – 25

- (a) the seizure and retention of any property in connection with any contravention of the byelaw, and
- (b) the forfeiture of any such property on a person’s conviction of an offence of contravention of the byelaw.”
- (2) In section 385 of the Greater London Authority Act 1999 (byelaws), in subsection (4)(b) for “a trading byelaw” substitute “any byelaw under this section”. 30

Misuse of drugs

149 Temporary control of drugs

Schedule 16 (which makes provision for temporary class drug orders under the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971) has effect. 35

150 Advisory Council on the Misuse of Drugs

In Schedule 1 to the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 (constitution etc of the Advisory Council on the Misuse of Drugs), in paragraph 1 –

- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), omit the words after “appropriate”, and
- (b) omit sub-paragraph (2).

Arrest warrants

151 Restriction on issue of arrest warrants in private prosecutions

- | | |
|---|----|
| (1) In section 1 of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (issue of summons or warrant), after subsection (4) insert – | 5 |
| “(4A) Where a person who is not a public prosecutor lays an information before a justice of the peace in respect of an offence to which this subsection applies, no warrant shall be issued under this section without the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions. | 10 |
| (4B) In subsection (4A) “public prosecutor” has the same meaning as in section 29 of the Criminal Justice Act 2003. | |
| (4C) Subsection (4A) applies to – | |
| (a) a qualifying offence which is alleged to have been committed outside the United Kingdom, or | 15 |
| (b) an ancillary offence relating to a qualifying offence where it is alleged that the qualifying offence was, or would have been, committed outside the United Kingdom. | |
| (4D) In subsection (4C) “qualifying offence” means any of the following – | |
| (a) piracy or an offence under section 2 of the Piracy Act 1837 (piracy where murder is attempted); | 20 |
| (b) an offence under section 1 of the Geneva Conventions Act 1957 (grave breaches of Geneva conventions); | |
| (c) an offence which (disregarding the provisions of the Suppression of Terrorism Act 1978, the Nuclear Material (Offences) Act 1983, the United Nations Personnel Act 1997 and the Terrorism Act 2000) would not be an offence apart from section 1 of the Internationally Protected Persons Act 1978 (attacks and threats of attacks on protected persons); | 25 |
| (d) an offence under section 1 of the Taking of Hostages Act 1982 (hostage-taking); | 30 |
| (e) an offence under section 1, 2 or 6 of the Aviation Security Act 1982 (hijacking etc); | |
| (f) an offence which (disregarding the provisions of the Internationally Protected Persons Act 1978, the Suppression of Terrorism Act 1978, the United Nations Personnel Act 1997 and the Terrorism Act 2000) would not be an offence apart from sections 1 to 2A of the Nuclear Material (Offences) Act 1983 (offences relating to nuclear material); | 35 |
| (g) an offence under section 134 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 (torture); | |
| (h) an offence under section 1 of the Aviation and Maritime Security Act 1990 (endangering safety at aerodromes); | 40 |
| (i) an offence under sections 9 to 14 of that Act (hijacking ships etc); | |
| (j) an offence which (disregarding the provisions of the Internationally Protected Persons Act 1978, the Suppression of Terrorism Act 1978, the Nuclear Material (Offences) Act 1983 and the Terrorism Act 2000) would not be an offence apart from sections 1 to 3 of the United Nations Personnel Act 1997 (attacks on UN workers etc). | 45 |

- (4E) In subsection (4C) “ancillary offence”, in relation to an offence, means—
- (a) an offence under Part 2 of the Serious Crime Act 2007 (encouraging or assisting crime) in relation to the offence (including, in relation to times before the commencement of that Part, an offence of incitement);
 - (b) attempting or conspiring to commit the offence.”. 5
- (2) In section 25 of the Prosecution of Offences Act 1985 (consents to prosecutions etc), after subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) Subsection (2)(a) is subject to section 1(4A) of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980.”. 10

PART 5

10

FINAL PROVISIONS

152 Orders and regulations

- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State under this Act to make an order or regulations is exercisable by statutory instrument.
- (2) A statutory instrument containing any of the following orders or regulations may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament—
- (a) regulations under section 31 or 54(2) or paragraph 21(a) of Schedule 6;
 - (b) an order under section 58;
 - (c) regulations under section 125, 127, 128, 130, 133 or 135(2). 20
- (3) Any other statutory instrument containing an order or regulations under this Act, except an instrument containing only an order specified in subsection (4), is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (4) The orders referred to subsection (3) are those under section 54(1)(b), 55(1), 77 or 155. 25
- (5) An order or regulations made by the Secretary of State under this Act may—
- (a) include incidental, supplementary and consequential provision;
 - (b) make transitory or transitional provision or savings;
 - (c) make different provision for different cases, areas or purposes. 30

153 Money

The following are to be paid out of money provided by Parliament—

- (a) *expenditure incurred by a Minister of the Crown by virtue of this Act;*
- (b) *any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable under any other Act out of money so provided.* 35

154 Extent

- (1) This Act extends to England and Wales only.
- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to subsections (3) and (4).
- (3) The following provisions extend to England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland— 40

-
- (a) section 58 (power to make provision about elections etc),
 - (b) section 149 and Schedule 16 (temporary class drug orders),
 - (c) section 150 (Advisory Council on the Misuse of Drugs),
 - (d) section 152 (orders and regulations) so far as relating to an order under section 58, and
 - (e) this section and sections 155 and 156 (final provisions).
- (4) The amendments, repeals and revocations made by this Act (so far as not made by provision mentioned in subsection (3)(b) or (c)) have the same extent as the provisions amended, repealed or revoked. 5
- 155 Commencement** 10
- (1) The provisions of this Act come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint.
 - (2) Subsection (1) is subject to subsections (3) and (4).
 - (3) The following provisions come into force on the day on which this Act is passed – 15
 - (a) section 58 (power to make provision about elections);
 - (b) section 151 (restrictions on issue of arrest warrants in private prosecutions);
 - (c) sections 152 to 156 (final).
 - (4) Section 148(1), so far as relating to byelaws made by local authorities in Wales, comes into force on such day as the Welsh Ministers may by order appoint. 20
 - (5) Section 152(1) and (5)(b) applies to an order of the Welsh Ministers under subsection (4) as it applies to an order of the Secretary of State under this Act.
- 156 Short title**
- This Act may be cited as the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011. 25

SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 1

Section 1

POLICE AND CRIME COMMISSIONERS

Introduction

- 1 This Schedule applies in relation to the police and crime commissioners established under section 1. 5

Salary etc

- 2 (1) A police and crime commissioner is to be paid a salary.
(2) The Secretary of State is to determine the amount of a commissioner's salary.
(3) The Secretary of State may determine that different salaries are to be payable to the police and crime commissioners for different police areas. 10
- 3 (1) A police and crime commissioner is to be paid authorised allowances.
(2) In this paragraph "authorised allowances" means allowances, in respect of expenses incurred by a commissioner in the exercise of the commissioner's functions, which are of the kinds and amounts determined by the Secretary of State as payable in accordance with this paragraph. 15
(3) A determination under this paragraph may make different provision for different cases.
- 4 (1) A police and crime commissioner must make authorised pension payments.
(2) In this paragraph "authorised pension payments" means – 20
(a) pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been commissioner, and
(b) amounts for or towards provisions of pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been commissioner,
which are of the kinds and amounts determined by the Secretary of State as payable in accordance with this paragraph. 25
- 5 (1) Payments under paragraph 2 and 3 are to be made by the police and crime commissioner concerned.
(2) The Secretary of State must publish every determination under any of paragraphs 2 to 4. 30

Staff

- 6 (1) A police and crime commissioner must appoint –

-
- (a) a person to be the head of the commissioner’s staff (referred to in this Part as the commissioner’s chief executive); and
- (b) a person to be responsible for the proper administration of the commissioner’s financial affairs (referred to in this Part as the commissioner’s chief finance officer). 5
- (2) A police and crime commissioner may appoint such other staff as the commissioner thinks appropriate to enable the commissioner to exercise the functions of commissioner.
- (3) Section 113 of the Local Government Finance Act 1988 applies to the chief finance officer of a police and crime commissioner as it applies to the persons having responsibility for the administration of financial affairs mentioned in that section. 10
- 7 (1) A police and crime commissioner must appoint a qualified person to act as chief executive, or a chief finance officer, if and for as long as – 15
- (a) that post is vacant, or
- (b) the holder of that post is, in the commissioner’s opinion, unable to carry out the duties of that post.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) a person is qualified to be appointed to act as chief executive, or as chief finance officer, if that person is qualified to be appointed to the post under paragraph 6. 20
- (3) A reference in any enactment to the chief executive, or chief finance officer, of a police and crime commissioner includes a reference to a person acting as chief executive, or chief finance officer, in accordance with sub-paragraph (1).
- Remuneration etc of staff* 25
- 8 (1) A police and crime commissioner may pay remuneration, allowances and gratuities to the members of the commissioner’s staff.
- (2) A police and crime commissioner may pay – 30
- (a) pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the commissioner’s staff, and
- (b) amounts for or towards provisions of pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the commissioner’s staff.
- (3) In this paragraph “allowances”, in relation to a member of a commissioner’s staff, means allowances in respect of expenses incurred by the member of staff in the course of employment as such a member of staff. 35
- Incidental powers*
- 9 (1) A police and crime commissioner may do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is conducive or incidental to, the exercise of the functions of commissioner.
- (2) That includes – 40
- (a) entering into contracts and other agreements (whether legally binding or not);
- (b) acquiring and disposing of property (including land);
- (c) borrowing money.

- (3) This paragraph is subject to the other provisions of this Act and to any other enactment about the powers of police and crime commissioners.

Protection from personal liability

- 10 (1) A person who is a police and crime commissioner has no personal liability for an act or omission done by the person in the exercise of the commissioner’s functions unless it is shown to have been done otherwise than in good faith. 5
- (2) A person who is a member of staff of a police and crime commissioner has no personal liability for an act or omission done by the person in the carrying out of duties as a member of staff unless it is shown to have been done otherwise than in good faith. 10

Financial year

- 11 (1) The first financial year of a police and crime commissioner is the period that—
- (a) begins with the day on which the first election of the commissioner is held, and 15
- (b) ends with the following 31 March.
- (2) After that, a commissioner’s financial year is the period of 12 months ending with 31 March.

SCHEDULE 2

Section 2 20

CHIEF CONSTABLES

Introduction

- 1 This Schedule applies to the chief constables established under section 2.

Status, name etc

- 2 A chief constable is a corporation sole. 25
- 3 The name of the chief constable for a police force is “the Chief Constable of” with the addition of the name of the police force.

Civilian staff

- 4 (1) The chief constable of a police force must appoint a person to be responsible for the proper administration of the police force’s financial affairs (referred to in this Part as the police force’s chief finance officer). 30
- (2) The chief constable of a police force may appoint such other staff as the chief constable thinks appropriate—
- (a) to enable the chief constable to exercise the chief constable’s functions, or 35
- (b) otherwise to assist the relevant police force.

(3) Section 113 of the Local Government Finance Act 1988 applies to the chief finance officer of a police and crime commissioner as it applies to the persons having responsibility for the administration of financial affairs mentioned in that section.

- 5 (1) A chief constable must appoint a qualified person to act as chief finance officer, if and for as long as – 5
- (a) that post is vacant, or
 - (b) the holder of that post is, in the chief constable’s opinion, unable to carry out the duties of that post.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) a person is qualified to be appointed to act as chief finance officer if that person is qualified to be appointed to the post under paragraph 4. 10
- (3) A reference in any enactment to the chief finance officer of a chief constable includes a reference to a person acting as chief finance officer in accordance with sub-paragraph (1). 15

Remuneration etc of staff

- 6 (1) A chief constable may pay remuneration, allowances and gratuities to the members of the police force’s staff.
- (2) A chief constable may pay – 20
- (a) pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the police force’s staff, and
 - (b) amounts for or towards provisions of pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the police force’s staff.
- (3) In this paragraph “allowances”, in relation to a member of a police force’s staff, means allowances in respect of expenses incurred by the member of staff in the course of employment as such a member of staff. 25

Incidental powers

- 7 (1) A chief constable may do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is conducive or incidental to, the exercise of the functions of chief constable.
- (2) That includes – 30
- (a) entering into contracts and other agreements (whether legally binding or not);
 - (b) acquiring and disposing of property, apart from land, but only with the consent of the relevant police and crime commissioner;
 - (c) borrowing money, but only with the consent of the relevant police and crime commissioner. 35
- (3) This paragraph is subject to the other provisions of this Act and to any other enactment about the powers of chief constables.

Damages and costs in legal proceedings

- 8 (1) The following amounts must be paid out of the police fund kept by the relevant police and crime commissioner – 40

- (a) any damages or costs awarded against a chief constable in any proceedings brought against the chief constable in respect of the acts or omissions of a member of the relevant police force’s civilian staff;
 - (b) any costs incurred by a chief constable in any such proceedings so far as not recovered by the chief constable in the proceedings; and 5
 - (c) any sum required in connection with the settlement of any claim made against a chief constable in respect of the acts or omissions of a member of the relevant police force’s civilian staff, if the settlement is approved by the relevant police and crime commissioner.
- (2) A police and crime commissioner may, in such cases and to such extent as appear to the commissioner to be appropriate, pay out of the police fund kept by the commissioner – 10
- (a) any damages or costs awarded against a member of the relevant police force’s civilian staff in proceedings for any unlawful conduct of that person; 15
 - (b) any costs incurred and not recovered by such a member of staff in such proceedings; and
 - (c) any sum required in connection with the settlement of a claim that has or might have given rise to such proceedings.
- Disciplinary action etc* 20
- 9 Paragraph 2 does not affect the application of regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996 to the constable who occupies the office of chief constable.

SCHEDULE 3

Section 3

MAYOR’S OFFICE FOR POLICING AND CRIME

25

Allowances

- 1 (1) The occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime is to be paid authorised allowances.
- (2) In this paragraph “authorised allowances” means allowances, in respect of expenses incurred by the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime in the exercise of the functions of that Office, which are of the kinds and amounts designated by the Secretary of State as payable in accordance with this paragraph. 30
- (3) A determination under this paragraph may make different provision for different cases. 35
- (4) Payments under this paragraph are to be made by the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.

Staff

- 2 (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must appoint a person to be the head of that Office’s staff (referred to in this Part as the chief executive of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime). 40

- (2) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may appoint such other staff (in addition to the chief executive, and the chief finance officer appointed under section 127(2) of the Greater London Authority Act 1999) as the Office thinks appropriate to enable the Office to exercise its functions.
- (3) A reference in any enactment to the officers of a functional body of the Greater London Authority is, in the case of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, to be read as reference to the staff of that Office. 5
- 3 (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must appoint a qualified person to act as chief executive if and for as long as –
- (a) that post is vacant, or 10
- (b) the holder of that post is, in the opinion of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, unable to carry out the duties of that post.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) a person is qualified to be appointed to act as chief executive if that person is qualified to be appointed to the post under paragraph 2. 15
- (3) A reference in any enactment to the chief executive of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime includes a reference to a person acting as chief executive in accordance with sub-paragraph (1).

The Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies to the person appointed under section 18 to be the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime. 20
- (2) None of the following may be appointed as the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime –
- (a) a police and crime commissioner;
- (b) a person who has not attained the age of 18 on the day of appointment; 25
- (c) a person who is subject to a relevant disqualification;
- (d) a Member of the House of Commons;
- (e) a member of the European Parliament;
- (f) a member of the National Assembly for Wales; 30
- (g) a member of the Scottish Parliament;
- (h) a member of the Northern Ireland Assembly.
- (3) The terms and conditions of a person who is appointed as the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime must provide for the appointment to end not later than the day when the current term of office of the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime ends. 35
- (4) If, and for as long as, the person who is Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime is a member of the London Assembly, the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime is not to be regarded as a member of staff of the Mayor’s Office of Policing and Crime. 40
- (5) But sub-paragraph (4) does not prevent the person who is the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime from receiving allowances and gratuities under paragraph 6.
- (6) Section 7 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (appointment of staff on merit) does not apply to the Deputy Mayor for Policing and Crime. 45

- (7) In this paragraph “current term of office”, in relation to the appointment of a member of staff by the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, means the occupant’s term of office which is running at the time the appointment is made.
- (8) For the purposes of this paragraph, a person is subject to a relevant disqualification if the person is disqualified from being elected as, or being, a police and crime commissioner under –
 - (a) section 66(1), other than paragraph (e)(ii) (police officers, police-related employment etc); or
 - (b) section 67(1), (3)(a)(iii) or (iv), (3)(c) or (3)(d) (citizenship, bankruptcy, criminal convictions & corrupt or illegal election practices).

Notification of appointments

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies to every appointment of a member of staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime. 15
- (2) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime must notify the London Assembly of –
 - (a) the name of the person appointed;
 - (b) the post to which the person has been appointed; and
 - (c) the terms and conditions on which the person has been appointed. 20
- (3) In this paragraph, a reference to appointment of a person as a member of staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime includes a reference to a person who is already a member of staff of the Office being appointed to a different post within the staff of the Office.

Remuneration etc of staff 25

- 6 (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may pay remuneration, allowances and gratuities to the members of the staff of the Office.
- (2) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may pay –
 - (a) pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the staff of the Office, and 30
 - (b) amounts for or towards provisions of pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the staff of the Office.
- (3) In this paragraph “allowances”, in relation to a member of the staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, means allowances in respect of expenses incurred by the member of staff in the course of employment as such a member of staff. 35

Incidental powers

- 7 (1) The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime may do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is conducive or incidental to, the exercise of the functions of the Office. 40
- (2) That includes –
 - (a) entering into contracts and other agreements (whether legally binding or not);
 - (b) acquiring and disposing of property (including land);

(c) borrowing money.

- (3) This paragraph is subject to the other provisions of this Act and to any other enactment about the powers of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.

Protection from personal liability

- 8 (1) A person who is the occupant of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime has no personal liability for an act or omission done by the person in the exercise of the functions of the office unless it is shown to have been done otherwise than in good faith. 5
- (2) A person who is a member of staff of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime has no personal liability for an act or omission done by the person in the carrying out of duties as a member of staff unless it is shown to have been done otherwise than in good faith. 10

Financial year

- 9 (1) The first financial year of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime is the period that – 15
- (a) begins with the day of the ordinary election in 2012, and
- (b) ends with the following 31 March.
- (2) After that, the financial year of the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime is the period of 12 months ending with 31 March.
- (3) In this paragraph “ordinary election” means an election of the Mayor of London held under section 3 of the Greater London Authority Act 1999. 20

SCHEDULE 4

Section 4

COMMISSIONER OF POLICE OF THE METROPOLIS

Civilian staff

- 1 (1) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis must appoint a person to be responsible for the proper administration of the metropolitan police force’s financial affairs (referred to in this Part as the metropolitan police force’s chief finance officer). 25
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may appoint such other staff as the Commissioner thinks appropriate – 30
- (a) to enable the Commissioner to exercise the Commissioner’s functions, or
- (b) otherwise to assist the metropolitan police force.
- (3) Section 113 of the Local Government Finance Act 1988 applies to the chief finance officer of a police and crime commissioner as it applies to the persons having responsibility for the administration of financial affairs mentioned in that section. 35

Remuneration etc of staff

- 2 (1) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may pay remuneration, allowances and gratuities to the members of the metropolitan police force's staff.
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may pay – 5
- (a) pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the metropolitan police force's staff, and
 - (b) amounts for or towards provisions of pensions to, or in respect of, persons who have been members of the metropolitan police force's staff. 10
- (3) In this paragraph “allowances”, in relation to a member of a metropolitan police force's staff, means allowances in respect of expenses incurred by the member of staff in the course of employment as such a member of staff.

Incidental powers

- 3 (1) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may do anything which is calculated to facilitate, or is conducive or incidental to, the exercise of the functions of the Commissioner. 15
- (2) That includes –
- (a) entering into contracts and other agreements (whether legally binding or not); 20
 - (b) acquiring and disposing of property, apart from land, but only with the consent of the Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime;
 - (c) borrowing money, but only with the consent of the Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime.
- (3) This paragraph is subject to the other provisions of this Act and to any other enactment about the powers of the Commissioner. 25

Damages and costs in legal proceedings

- 4 (1) The following amounts must be paid out of the police fund kept by the Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime –
- (a) any damages or costs awarded against the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis in any proceedings brought against the Commissioner in respect of the acts or omissions of a member of the metropolitan police force's civilian staff; 30
 - (b) any costs incurred by the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis in any such proceedings so far as not recovered by the Commissioner in the proceedings; and 35
 - (c) any sum required in connection with the settlement of any claim made against the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis in respect of the acts or omissions of a member of the metropolitan police force's civilian staff, if the settlement is approved by the Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime. 40
- (2) The Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime may, in such cases and to such extent as appear to the Office to be appropriate, pay out of the police fund kept by the Office –

- (a) any damages or costs awarded against a member of the metropolitan police force’s civilian staff in proceedings for any unlawful conduct of that person;
- (b) any costs incurred and not recovered by such a member of staff in such proceedings; and 5
- (c) any sum required in connection with the settlement of a claim that has or might have given rise to such proceedings.

Disciplinary action etc

- 5 Section 4(1) does not affect the application of regulations under section 50 of the Police Act 1996 to the constable who occupies the office of Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis. 10

SCHEDULE 5

Section 26

ISSUING PRECEPTS

Introduction

- 1 (1) A police and crime commissioner may not issue a precept under section 40 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 for a financial year until the end of the scrutiny process is reached. 15
- (2) The end of the scrutiny process is reached when—
- (a) in a case where paragraph 5 applies, the police and crime commissioner gives the police and crime panel a response to the panel’s report; or 20
 - (b) in a case where paragraph 6 applies, the end of the process is reached in accordance with regulations under paragraph 8.
- (3) References in this Schedule to the issuing of a precept include references to the issuing of a substitute precept. 25

Commissioner to notify panel of proposed precept

- 2 The police and crime commissioner must notify the relevant police and crime panel of the precept which the commissioner is proposing to issue for the financial year (the “proposed precept”).

Panel to review proposed precept 30

- 3 (1) The police and crime panel must review the proposed precept notified to it under paragraph 2.
- (2) The panel must make a report to the commissioner on the proposed precept.
- (3) The report may include recommendations, including recommendations as to the precept that should be issued for the financial year. 35

Panel’s power to veto precept

- 4 (1) The police and crime panel may, having reviewed the proposed precept, veto the proposed precept.

- (2) If the panel vetoes the proposed precept, the report made under paragraph 3 must include a statement that the panel has vetoed it.
- (3) References in this Schedule to a police and crime panel vetoing a proposed precept are references to the panel making a decision, by the required majority, that the proposed precept should not be the precept for the financial year. 5
- (4) For that purpose, the panel makes that decision by the required majority if at least three-quarters of the persons who are members of the panel at the time when the decision is made vote in favour of making that decision.

Next steps if no veto 10

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies if the police and crime panel does not veto the proposed precept.
- (2) The police and crime commissioner must –
 - (a) have regard to the report made by the panel under paragraph 3 (including any recommendations in the report), 15
 - (b) give the panel a response to the report (and any such recommendations), and
 - (c) publish the response.
- (3) The police and crime commissioner may –
 - (a) issue the proposed precept as the precept for the financial year, or 20
 - (b) issue a different precept, but only if it would be in accordance with a recommendation made in the report to do so.
- (4) It is for the police and crime panel to determine the manner in which a response to a report or recommendations is to be published in accordance with sub-paragraph (2)(c). 25

Next steps if veto

- 6 (1) This paragraph applies if the police and crime panel vetoes the proposed precept.
- (2) The police and crime commissioner must not issue the proposed precept as the precept for the financial year. 30
- (3) The police and crime commissioner must –
 - (a) have regard to the report made by the panel under paragraph 3 (including any recommendations in the report),
 - (b) give the panel a response to the report (and any such recommendations), and 35
 - (c) publish the response.
- (4) It is for the police and crime panel to determine the manner in which a response to a report or recommendations is to be published in accordance with sub-paragraph (3)(c).
- (5) Sub-paragraph (2) is subject to regulations under paragraph 8. 40

Regulations

- 7 (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations about –

- | | | |
|---|--|----|
| | (a) the steps that are required to be taken by paragraphs 2 to 6, and | |
| | (b) procedures that are to be followed in taking such steps. | |
| | (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision about the time limits applicable in taking steps or following procedures. | |
| 8 | (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations about the issuing of precepts in cases where paragraph 6 applies. | 5 |
| | (2) The regulations may make provision about – | |
| | (a) steps to be taken, and | |
| | (b) procedures to be followed. | |
| | (3) That includes provision about the time limits applicable in taking steps or following procedures. | 10 |
| | (4) The regulations may make provision about limits on the precept that may be issued. | |
| | (5) That includes provision about the calculation of limits by reference to – | |
| | (a) one or more previous precepts, | 15 |
| | (b) the proposed precept, or | |
| | (c) any other matters. | |
| | (6) The regulations may confer functions on – | |
| | (a) police and crime commissioners, | |
| | (b) police and crime panels, | 20 |
| | (c) the Secretary of State, or | |
| | (d) any other person. | |
| | (7) That includes functions involving the exercise of a discretion. | |
| | (8) Sub-paragraphs (2) to (7) do not limit the power conferred by sub-paragraph (1). | 25 |

SCHEDULE 6

Section 28

POLICE AND CRIME PANELS

Introduction

- | | | |
|---|--|----|
| 1 | This Schedule applies in relation to police and crime panels established under section 28. | 30 |
|---|--|----|

Status

- | | | |
|---|--|----|
| 2 | A police and crime panel is – | |
| | (a) a committee of the participating authority (if it is a single-authority panel); or | |
| | (b) a joint committee of the participating authorities (if it is a joint panel). | 35 |

Membership: England

- 3 (1) In the case of a single-authority panel for a police area in England, the police and crime panel is to consist of –
- (a) ten members appointed from among the members of the participating authority by that authority, and 5
 - (b) two members co-opted by the panel.
- (2) In the case of a joint panel for a police area in England with ten participating authorities, the police and crime panel is to consist of –
- (a) ten members, each of whom is appointed by a different participating authority from among the members of that participating authority, and 10
 - (b) two members co-opted by the panel.
- (3) In the case of a joint panel for a police area in England with nine or fewer participating authorities, the police and crime panel is to consist of –
- (a) ten members appointed by the participating authorities from among the members of the participating authorities, and 15
 - (b) two members co-opted by the panel.
- (4) In the case of a joint panel for a police area in England with eleven or more participating authorities, the police and crime panel is to consist of –
- (a) the relevant number of members, each of whom is appointed by a different participating authority from among the members of that participating authority, and 20
 - (b) two members co-opted by the panel.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4), “relevant number”, in relation to a joint panel, means the number that is equal to the number of participating authorities. 25
- (6) In a case where a participating authority in England has a mayor and cabinet executive –
- (a) references in this Schedule to the members of the participating authority include the elected mayor, and
 - (b) the panel arrangements relating to the relevant police and crime panel must secure that the elected mayor is the member, or one of the members, of the participating authority who is appointed by the authority as a member of the panel. 30
- (7) In sub-paragraph (6) –
- (a) “mayor and cabinet executive” and “elected mayor” have the same meanings as in Part 2 of the Local Government Act 2000; 35
 - (b) “relevant police and crime panel”, in relation to a participating authority, means the police and crime panel for the police area which covers the participating authority.
- (8) The police and crime commissioner for a police area may not be a member of the police and crime panel for that area. 40

Membership: Wales

- 4 (1) In the case of a single-authority panel for a police area in Wales, the police and crime panel is to consist of –

-
- (a) ten members appointed from among the members of the participating authority by that authority,
- (b) two members co-opted by the panel, and
- (c) one member appointed by the Welsh Ministers from among the local elected representatives. 5
- (2) In the case of a joint panel for a police area in Wales with ten participating authorities, the police and crime panel is to consist of –
- (a) ten members, each of whom is appointed by a different participating authority from among the members of that participating authority,
- (b) two members co-opted by the panel, and 10
- (c) one member appointed by the Welsh Ministers from among the local elected representatives.
- (3) In the case of a joint panel for a police area in Wales with nine or fewer participating authorities, the police and crime panel is to consist of –
- (a) ten members appointed by the participating authorities from among the members of the participating authorities, 15
- (b) two members co-opted by the panel, and
- (c) one member appointed by the Welsh Ministers from among the local elected representatives.
- (4) In the case of a joint panel for a police area in Wales with eleven or more participating authorities, the police and crime panel is to consist of – 20
- (a) the relevant number of members, each of whom is appointed by a different participating authority from among the members of that participating authority,
- (b) two members co-opted by the panel, and 25
- (c) one member appointed by the Welsh Ministers from among the local elected representatives.
- (5) In sub-paragraph (4), “relevant number”, in relation to a joint panel, means the number that is equal to the number of participating authorities.
- (6) The police and crime commissioner for a police area may not be a member of the police and crime panel for that area. 30
- (7) In this Schedule “local elected representative”, in relation to the police and crime panel for a police area, means any of the following –
- (a) a person who is a member of the National Assembly of Wales for an Assembly constituency which falls wholly or partly within the police area; 35
- (b) a person who is a member of the National Assembly of Wales for an Assembly electoral region whose area is the same as, includes part of, or is included in, the police area;
- (c) a person who is a member of a county council or county borough council whose area is the same as, or included in, the police area; 40
- (d) a person who is the elected mayor of the mayor and cabinet executive (within the meaning of Part 2 of the Local Government Act 2000) of a county council or county borough council whose area is the same as, or included in, the police area. 45

Appointment of local authority members

- 5 (1) The panel arrangements must make provision about the appointment of, and holding of office by, the local authority members of the panel.
- (2) The provision that may be made under this paragraph includes provision about – 5
- (a) the term of office of members of the panel;
 - (b) resignation, and removal, of members of the panel;
 - (c) conditions for re-appointment of members of the panel.
- (3) In the case of a joint panel to which paragraph 3(3) or 4(3) applies, the panel arrangements must secure that – 10
- (a) at least one member of each participating authority is a member of the panel, and
 - (b) a member of any particular participating authority is appointed as a member of the panel by that authority.
- 6 The panel arrangements must secure that, as far as is reasonably practicable, the local authority members of a police and crime panel (when taken together) represent all parts of the relevant police area. 15
- 7 The panel arrangements must secure that, as far as is reasonably practicable, the local authority members of a police and crime panel (when taken together) represent the political make-up of the participating authority, or of all the participating authorities taken together. 20

Co-option of members

- 8 (1) The panel arrangements must make provision about the co-option of, and holding of office by, the two co-opted members of the police and crime panel. 25
- (2) The provision that may be made under this paragraph includes provision about –
- (a) the term of office of the co-opted members;
 - (b) resignation, and removal, of co-opted members;
 - (c) conditions for re-appointment of co-opted members. 30
- 9 A person may not be a co-opted member of a police and crime panel if the person is any of the following –
- (a) a member of the police and crime commissioner’s staff;
 - (b) a member of the civilian staff of the relevant police force;
 - (c) a member of a participating authority; 35
 - (d) a Member of the House of Commons;
 - (e) a member of the National Assembly for Wales;
 - (f) a member of the Scottish Parliament;
 - (g) a member of the European Parliament.

Appointment of local elected representatives in Wales 40

- 10 (1) The panel arrangements for a police and crime panel in Wales must make provision about the holding of office by the member of the panel who is the local elected representative.

- (2) The provision that may be made under this paragraph includes provision about –
- (a) the term of office of the member;
 - (b) resignation, and removal, of the member;
 - (c) conditions for re-appointment of the member.

5

Skills etc of members

- 11 (1) In co-opting members, the panel must secure that, as far as is reasonably practicable, the members of the panel have, between them, the skills, knowledge and experience necessary for the police and crime panel to discharge its functions effectively.
- (2) The panel arrangements must secure that, as far as is reasonably practicable, the members of the panel have, between them, the skills, knowledge and experience necessary for the police and crime panel to discharge its functions effectively.

10

Voting by members

15

- 12 All members of a police and crime panel may vote in proceedings of the panel.

Exercise of special functions

- 13 (1) The special functions of a police and crime panel may only be exercised at a meeting of the whole panel.
- (2) In the case of a police and crime panel in Wales –
- (a) the function conferred by virtue of section 5A(7) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 of determining whether to agree to become a party to a combination agreement (within the meaning of that section) –
 - (i) may also only be exercised at a meeting of the whole panel, and
 - (ii) may be exercised so as to agree to become a party to a combination agreement only by a unanimous vote; and
 - (b) the function conferred by section 7(1C) of that Act of determining whether to consent to the issuing of a requirement for a report under subsection (1A) of that section –
 - (i) may also only be exercised at a meeting of the whole panel, and
 - (ii) may be exercised so as to consent to the issuing of a requirement for a report only by a unanimous vote.
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) are without prejudice to rules of procedure about the quorum of a meeting of the whole panel.
- (4) References in this paragraph to a unanimous vote, in relation to a decision by a meeting of a police and crime panel whether to exercise of a function in a particular way, are references to all the members of the panel who are attending the meeting voting in favour of the function being exercised in that way.
- (5) In this paragraph “special functions” means the functions conferred on a police and crime panel by –

20

25

30

35

40

- (a) section 28(2) (scrutiny of police and crime plan),
- (b) section 28(3) (scrutiny of annual report),
- (c) Schedule 5 (scrutiny of proposed precept), and
- (d) Part 1 of Schedule 8 (scrutiny of appointment of chief constables).

Functions 5

- 14 A police and crime panel may not exercise any functions other than those conferred by this Act.

Rules of procedure

- 15 (1) A police and crime panel must make rules of procedure for the panel.
- (2) A police and crime panel's rules of procedure must make provision about the appointment, resignation and removal of a person to chair the panel. 10
- (3) The police and crime panel's rules of procedure may, in particular, make provision about—
- (a) the method of making decisions, and
 - (b) the formation of sub-committees. 15
- (4) A sub-committee of a police and crime panel may not co-opt members.
- (5) This paragraph is subject to paragraph 13.

Allowances

- 16 The panel arrangements may make provision about the payment of allowances to members of the police and crime panel. 20

Promotion of, and support, for panels

- 17 The panel arrangements must make provision for—
- (a) the role of the police and crime panel to be promoted;
 - (b) administrative and other support to be given to the police and crime panel and its members; 25
 - (c) support and guidance to be given to—
 - (i) members of participating authorities,
 - (ii) members of the executives (if any) of participating authorities, and
 - (iii) officers of participating authorities, 30in relation to the functions of the police and crime panel.

Costs of the panel

- 18 In the case of a joint panel, the panel arrangements must make provision about—
- (a) how the participating authorities are to meet the costs of the panel, and 35
 - (b) insofar as the provision is necessary, how funds paid (whether by the Secretary of State or otherwise) to meet the costs of the panel are to be paid to, or distributed between, the participating authorities.

Joint panels: making panel arrangements

- 19 In the case of a joint panel, all participating authorities must agree to the making or modification of panel arrangements.

Exercise of functions by local authorities with executive arrangements

- 20 (1) Functions of local authorities in relation to police and crime panels are, in the case of local authorities with executive arrangements, functions that may (but need not be) functions of the executive. 5
- (2) Expressions used in this paragraph and in Part 2 of the Local Government Act 2000 have the same meanings in this paragraph as in that Part.

Application of other legislation 10

- 21 The Secretary of State may, by regulations –
- (a) amend or otherwise modify any enactment applying to committees of local authorities in its application to police and crime panels, and
- (b) provide for any enactment which applies to committees of local authorities (but not to police and crime panels) to apply (with or without modifications) to police and crime panels. 15

Interpretation

- 22 (1) In this Schedule –
- “co-opted member”, in relation to a police and crime panel, means a person who is member of the panel by virtue of sub-paragraph (b) of – 20
- (a) paragraph 3(1), (2), (3) or (4), or
- (b) paragraph 4(1), (2), (3) or (4);
- “local authority member”, in relation to a police and crime panel, means a person who is member of the panel by virtue of sub-paragraph (a) of – 25
- (a) paragraph 3(1), (2), (3) or (4), or
- (b) paragraph 4(1), (2), (3) or (4);
- “joint panel” means a police and crime panel established by two or more local authorities; 30
- “panel arrangements”, in relation to a police and crime panel, means the arrangements made by the participating authority, or participating authorities, under which the panel is established;
- “participating authority”, in relation to a police and crime panel, means the local authority, or each local authority, which is covered by the police area to which the panel relates; 35
- “single-authority panel” means a police and crime panel established by one local authority.
- (2) Expressions used in this Schedule and in section 28 have the same meanings in this Schedule as in that section. 40

SCHEDULE 7

Section 31

REGULATIONS ABOUT COMPLAINTS AND CONDUCT MATTERS

Introduction

- 1 (1) In this Schedule –
- “conduct matter” has the same meaning as in section 31; 5
 - “police force” means a police force maintained for a police area in England or Wales or any other police force which exercises functions in England or Wales;
 - “qualifying complaint” has the same meaning as in section 31;
 - “regulations” means regulations under section 31. 10
- (2) The provisions of this Schedule that confer power to make particular kinds of regulations do not affect the generality of the power conferred by section 31.

Investigation of serious complaints and conduct matters

- 2 (1) This paragraph applies to – 15
- (a) serious complaints, and
 - (b) conduct matters.
- (2) Regulations must provide for serious complaints and conduct matters to be investigated –
- (a) by the Independent Police Complaints Commission, or 20
 - (b) by a police force, in an investigation that is under the management of the Independent Police Complaints Commission.
- (3) This paragraph does not prevent regulations from making provision about the receipt or initial handling of serious complaints or conduct matters otherwise than by the Independent Police Complaints Commission or a police force. 25
- (4) This paragraph does not prevent regulations from making provision about –
- (a) circumstances in which serious complaints or conduct matters are not to be investigated; and 30
 - (b) circumstances in which investigations of serious complaints or conduct matters are to be discontinued;
- including provision about the determination of such matters (whether by the Independent Police Complaints Commissioner, a police force or otherwise). 35
- (5) Regulations may make provision about what is to be taken to be a criminal offence, or other corrupt behaviour, for these purposes.
- (6) In this paragraph “serious complaint” means a qualifying complaint made about conduct which constitutes or involves, or appears to constitute or involve – 40
- (a) the commission of a criminal offence, or
 - (b) other corrupt behaviour.

Resolution of other complaints

- 3 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to qualifying complaints which are not, or cease to be, investigated by the Independent Police Complaints Commission or a police force.
- (2) Regulations – 5
- (a) may not provide for the investigation of such complaints; but
- (b) must provide for police and crime panels to engage in informal resolution of such complaints.
- (3) This paragraph does not prevent regulations from making provision about the receipt or initial handling of qualifying complaints otherwise than by police and crime panels. 10
- (4) This paragraph does not prevent regulations from making provision about –
- (a) circumstances in which police and crime panels are not required to engage in informal resolution of such complaints; and 15
- (b) circumstances in which informal resolution of such complaints is to be discontinued;
- including provision about the determination of such matters (whether by police and crime panels or otherwise).
- (5) In this Schedule – 20
- (a) references to engaging in informal resolution of a complaint are references to encouraging, facilitating, or otherwise assisting in, the resolution of the complaint otherwise than by legal proceedings; and
- (b) references to informal resolution of a complaint are to be construed accordingly. 25

Conferral of functions

- 4 (1) Regulations may confer functions on –
- (a) the Independent Police Complaints Commission,
- (b) a police force,
- (c) police and crime panels, 30
- (d) the Secretary of State, or
- (e) any other person.
- (2) That includes functions involving the exercise of a discretion.

No power to terminate holding of office or employment

- 5 Regulations may not provide for a police and crime commissioner – 35
- (a) to cease to hold office, or
- (b) to be required to cease to hold office.

Application and amendment of other enactments

- 6 (1) Regulations may apply (with or without modifications), or amend or otherwise modify, Part 2 of the Police Reform Act 2002. 40
- (2) Regulations may apply (with or without modifications) such other enactments, or make such amendments or other modifications of other

enactments, as appear to the Secretary of State to be necessary or expedient in connection with, or in consequence of, regulations.

SCHEDULE 8

Section 38

APPOINTMENT, SUSPENSION AND REMOVAL OF SENIOR POLICE OFFICERS

PART 1

5

APPOINTMENT OF CHIEF CONSTABLES

Introduction

- 1 A police and crime commissioner must comply with this Part of this Schedule in appointing a chief constable under section 38.

No appointment until end of confirmation process 10

- 2 (1) A police and crime commissioner must not appoint a constable to be chief constable until the end of the confirmation process has been reached.

- (2) The end of the confirmation process is reached –
- (a) in a case where paragraph 7 applies, when the first of the events mentioned in sub-paragraphs (3) and (4) occurs; or 15
 - (b) in a case where paragraph 8 applies, when the first of the events mentioned in sub-paragraphs (3) and (5) occurs.

- (3) The first event mentioned in sub-paragraphs (2)(a) and (2)(b) is the period of three weeks mentioned in paragraph 4(6) ending without the relevant police and crime panel having given the police and crime commissioner any report on the proposed appointment. 20

- (4) The second event mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(a) is the police and crime commissioner notifying the panel under paragraph 7(3) of the decision whether or not to accept the panel's recommendation in relation to the appointment. 25

- (5) The second event mentioned in sub-paragraph (2)(b) is the end of the confirmation process being reached in accordance with regulations under paragraph 10.

Notification of proposed appointment

- 3 (1) A police and crime commissioner must notify the relevant police and crime panel of each proposed appointment of a chief constable by the commissioner. 30

- (2) In such a case, the police and crime commissioner must also notify the relevant police and crime panel of the following information –
- (a) the name of the constable whom the commissioner is proposing to appoint (“the candidate”); 35
 - (b) the criteria used to assess the suitability of the candidate for the appointment;
 - (c) why the candidate satisfies those criteria; and

- (d) the terms and conditions on which the candidate is to be appointed.

Panel to review and report on proposed appointment

- 4 (1) This paragraph applies if a police and crime panel is notified under paragraph 3 of a proposed appointment of a chief constable.
- (2) The panel must review the proposed appointment. 5
- (3) The panel must make a report to the commissioner on the proposed appointment.
- (4) The report must include a recommendation to the police and crime commissioner as to whether or not the candidate should be appointed.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (4) does not apply if the panel vetoes the proposed appointment under paragraph 5 (but see paragraph 5(2)). 10
- (6) The panel must comply with sub-paragraphs (2) and (3), and sub-paragraph (4) (if applicable), within the period of three weeks beginning with the day on which the panel receives the notification from the commissioner of the proposed appointment. 15
- (7) The panel must publish the report to the commissioner made under this paragraph.
- (8) It is for the panel to determine the manner in which the recommendation is to be published in accordance with sub-paragraph (7).
- (9) In calculating the period of three weeks for the purpose of sub-paragraph (6), any relevant post-election period is to be ignored. 20
- (10) For that purpose, “relevant post-election period” means the period that—
- (a) begins with the day of the poll at an ordinary election of a police and crime commissioner under section 50, and
- (b) ends with the day on which the person elected as police and crime commissioner delivers a declaration of acceptance of office under section 71. 25

Power to veto proposed appointment

- 5 (1) The police and crime panel may, having reviewed the proposed appointment, veto the appointment of the candidate. 30
- (2) If the panel vetoes the appointment of the candidate, the report made under paragraph 4 must include a statement that the panel has vetoed it.
- (3) References in this Schedule to a police and crime panel vetoing the appointment of a candidate are references to the panel making a decision, by the required majority, that the candidate should not be appointed as chief constable. 35
- (4) For that purpose, the panel makes that decision by the required majority if at least three-quarters of the persons who are members of the panel at the time when the decision is made vote in favour of making that decision.
- (5) The power conferred by this paragraph is exercisable in relation to a proposed appointment only during the period of three weeks mentioned in paragraph 4(6). 40

Confirmation hearings

- 6 (1) A police and crime panel must hold a confirmation hearing –
- (a) before making a report under paragraph 4 to the police and crime commissioner in relation to a proposed appointment of a chief constable, and 5
 - (b) before making a recommendation under paragraph 4 (where applicable) or vetoing an appointment under paragraph 5 (where applicable).
- (2) For the purposes of this Part a “confirmation hearing” is a meeting of the panel, held in public, at which the candidate is requested to appear for the purpose of answering questions relating to the appointment. 10
- (3) References in this Part to a person appearing at a meeting of the panel are references to the person –
- (a) attending the meeting in person, or
 - (b) not attending the meeting in person, but participating in the proceedings at the meeting by any means that enable the person to hear, and be heard in, those proceedings as they happen. 15

Next steps if no veto

- 7 (1) This paragraph applies if the police and crime panel does not veto the appointment of a candidate. 20
- (2) The police and crime commissioner may accept or reject the panel’s recommendation as to whether or not the candidate should be appointed.
- (3) The police and crime commissioner must notify the panel of the decision whether to accept or reject the recommendation.

Next steps if veto

- 8 (1) This paragraph applies if the police and crime panel vetoes the appointment of a candidate. 25
- (2) The police and crime commissioner must not appoint that candidate as chief constable.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) is subject to regulations under paragraph 10. 30

Regulations

- 9 (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations about –
- (a) the steps that are required to be taken by paragraphs 3 to 8, and
 - (b) procedures that are to be followed in taking such steps.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision about the time limits applicable in taking steps or following procedures (if, or to the extent that, this Part of this Schedule does not make such provision). 35
- 10 (1) The Secretary of State may make regulations about the appointment of chief constables in cases where paragraph 8 applies in relation to the appointment of a candidate (the “rejected candidate”). 40
- (2) The regulations may make provision about –

- (a) steps to be taken, and
 - (b) procedures to be followed.
- (3) That includes provision about the time limits applicable in taking steps or following procedures.
- (4) The regulations may make provision about limits on who may be considered for appointment. 5
- (5) That includes provision about limiting consideration for appointment to some or all of the persons already considered as part of the process by which the rejected candidate was selected for appointment.
- (6) The regulations may confer functions on— 10
- (a) police and crime commissioners,
 - (b) police and crime panels,
 - (c) the Secretary of State, or
 - (d) any other person.
- (7) That includes functions involving the exercise of a discretion. 15
- (8) Sub-paragraphs (2) to (7) do not limit the power conferred by sub-paragraph (1).

PART 2

SUSPENSION AND REMOVAL OF CHIEF CONSTABLES

Suspension 20

- 11 If a police and crime commissioner suspends a chief constable from duty under section 38, the commissioner must notify the relevant police and crime panel of the suspension.

Removal: general

- 12 (1) A police and crime commissioner must not call upon a chief constable to retire or resign until the end of the scrutiny process has been reached. 25
- (2) The end of the scrutiny process is reached when the first of the following events occurs—
- (a) the period of six weeks mentioned in paragraph 15(3) has ended without the panel having given the police and crime commissioner any recommendation as to whether or not the commissioner should call for the retirement or resignation; 30
 - (b) the police and crime commissioner notifies the panel under paragraph 16(2) of the decision whether or not to accept the panel's recommendation in relation to the resignation or retirement. 35

Removal: notification and representations

- 13 (1) A police and crime commissioner must comply with this paragraph before calling upon a chief constable to retire or resign under section 38.
- (2) The police and crime commissioner must give the chief constable a written explanation of the reasons why the commissioner is proposing to call for the retirement or resignation. 40

- (3) The police and crime commissioner must give the relevant police and crime panel –
 - (a) written notification that the commissioner is proposing to call upon the chief constable to retire or resign; and
 - (b) a copy of the reasons given to the chief constable in accordance with sub-paragraph (1). 5
- (4) The police and crime commissioner must give the chief constable the opportunity to make written representations about the proposal to call for the chief constable’s resignation or retirement.
- (5) The police and crime commissioner must – 10
 - (a) consider any written representations made by the chief constable; and
 - (b) give the relevant police and crime panel a copy of any such representations made by the chief constable, as soon as practicable after the commissioner is given them. 15

Removal: further notification

- 14 (1) A police and crime commissioner must comply with this paragraph if, after complying with paragraph 13, the police and crime commissioner is still proposing to call upon the chief constable to retire or resign under section 38.
- (2) The police and crime commissioner must notify – 20
 - (a) the chief constable, and
 - (b) the relevant police and crime panel,that the commissioner is still proposing to call upon the chief constable to retire or resign.

Removal: role of panel 25

- 15 (1) This paragraph applies if a police and crime panel is given a notification under paragraph 14.
- (2) The panel must make a recommendation to the police and crime commissioner as to whether or not the commissioner should call for the retirement or resignation. 30
- (3) The recommendation must be given to the police and crime commissioner in writing before the end of the period of six weeks beginning with the day on which the panel receives the notification under paragraph 14.
- (4) Before making the recommendation, the panel –
 - (a) may consult the chief inspector of constabulary, and
 - (b) must hold a scrutiny hearing. 35
- (5) The panel must publish the recommendation made under this paragraph.
- (6) It is for the panel to determine the manner in which the recommendation is to be published in accordance with sub-paragraph (5).
- (7) In calculating the period of six weeks mentioned in sub-paragraph (3), any relevant post-election period is to be ignored. 40
- (8) For that purpose, “relevant post-election period” means the period that –

- (a) begins with the day of the poll at an ordinary election of a police and crime commissioner under section 50, and
 - (b) ends with the day on which the person elected as police and crime commissioner delivers a declaration of acceptance of office under section 71. 5
- (9) For the purposes of this Part a “scrutiny hearing” is a meeting of the panel, held in private, at which the police and crime commissioner or chief constable is, or both of them are, requested to appear for the purpose of answering questions relating to the proposal to call upon the chief constable to retire or resign. 10
- (10) References in this Part to a person appearing at a meeting of the panel are references to the person –
- (a) attending the meeting in person, or
 - (b) not attending the meeting in person, but participating in the proceedings at the meeting by any means that enable the person to hear, and be heard in, those proceedings as they happen. 15

Removal: consideration of panel’s recommendation

- 16 (1) The police and crime commissioner –
- (a) must consider the panel’s recommendation given under paragraph 15, and 20
 - (b) having considered the recommendation, may accept or reject it.
- (2) The police and crime commissioner must notify the panel of the decision whether or not to accept the recommendation.

PART 3

SUSPENSION AND REMOVAL OF OTHER SENIOR POLICE OFFICERS 25

Senior police officers

- 17 In this Part of this Schedule “senior police officer” means –
- (a) a deputy chief constable, or
 - (b) an assistant chief constable.

Suspension 30

- 18 If a chief constable suspends a senior police from duty under section 39 or 40, the chief constable must notify the relevant police and crime commissioner of the suspension.

Removal

- 19 (1) A chief constable must comply with this paragraph before calling upon a senior police officer to retire or resign under section 39 or 40. 35
- (2) The chief constable must give the senior police officer a written explanation of the reasons why the chief constable is proposing to call for the retirement or resignation.

- (3) The chief constable must give the senior police officer the opportunity to make written representations about the proposal to call for the senior police officer’s retirement or resignation.
- (4) The chief constable must consider any written representations made by the senior police officer. 5
- 20 (1) This paragraph applies if, after complying with paragraph 19, the chief constable is still proposing to call upon the senior police officer to retire or resign under section 39 or 40.
- (2) Before calling for the retirement or resignation, the chief constable must consult the relevant police and crime commissioner. 10

SCHEDULE 9

Section 57

SUPPLEMENTARY VOTE SYSTEM

Application

- 1 This Schedule applies to an election under Chapter 6 of Part 1 of a police and crime commissioner for a police area at which there are three or more candidates. 15

First preference vote and second preference vote

- 2 In this Schedule—
“first preference vote” means a vote to the extent that it is given so as to indicate a first preference from among the candidates to be the police and crime commissioner; 20
“second preference vote” means a vote to the extent that it is given so as to indicate a second preference from among the candidates to be the police and crime commissioner.

Candidate with overall majority of first preference votes 25

- 3 If one of the candidates to be the police and crime commissioner receives more than half of all the first preference votes given in the police area, that candidate is to be returned as the police and crime commissioner.

No candidate with overall majority of first preference votes

- 4 (1) If none of the candidates to be the police and crime commissioner receives more than half of all the first preference votes given in the police area, the following provisions of this paragraph apply. 30
- (2) The two candidates who received the greatest number of first preference votes given in the police area remain in the contest.
- (3) If, by reason of an equality of first preference votes, three or more candidates are qualified to remain in the contest by virtue of sub-paragraph (2), all of them remain in the contest. 35
- (4) The other candidates are eliminated from the contest.

- (5) The number of second preference votes given in the police area for each of the candidates remaining in the contest by votes which did not give a first preference vote to any of those candidates must be ascertained.
- (6) That number must be added to the number of first preference votes given for that candidate, to give the total number of preference votes for that candidate. 5
- (7) The person who is to be returned as the police and crime commissioner for the police area is that one of the candidates remaining in the contest who has the greatest total number of preference votes.
- (8) If, by reason of an equality of total number of preference votes, two or more candidates remaining in the contest each have the greatest total number of preference votes, the police area returning officer must decide by lots which of them is to be returned as the police and crime commissioner. 10

SCHEDULE 10

Section 76

ELECTIONS OF POLICE AND CRIME COMMISSIONERS: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS 15

Local Government Act 1972

- 1 The Local Government Act 1972 is amended as follows.
- 2 In section 67 (consequential and transitional arrangements relating to Part 4), after subsection (5) insert—
- “(5A) Without prejudice to subsection (5), an order under section 58 which makes provision altering any police areas may make provision as to who is to be a police and crime commissioner, including—
- (a) provision for the police and crime commissioner for a police area affected by the order to become the police and crime commissioner for a police area resulting from the order; 25
- (b) provision for the holding of an election for the police and crime commissioner for any police area resulting from the order.
- (5B) Such an order which includes provision within subsection (5A)(b) may, in particular, require the election in question to be held before the alteration of police areas takes effect.” 30

Representation of the People Act 1983

- 3 In section 13B(4) of the Representation of the People Act 1983 (alteration of registers: pending elections), omit “and” at the end of paragraph (d) and after paragraph (f) insert “and
- (g) elections of police and crime commissioners in England and Wales.” 35

Police Act 1996

- 4 The Police Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- 5 (1) Section 32 (power to alter police areas by order) is amended as follows. 40

- (2) In subsection (3)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In subsection (4), after “ensure that” insert “no police area falls partly in England and partly in Wales and that”.
- 6 In section 33(1)(a) (objection to alterations proposed by Secretary of State) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 5
- 7 (1) Section 34 (orders altering police areas: supplementary provisions) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (1)(a), substitute –
- “(a) provision as to who is to be a police and crime commissioner;”.
- 10
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) Provision falling within subsection (1)(a) includes, in particular –
- (a) provision for the police and crime commissioner for a police area affected by the order to become the police and crime commissioner for a police area resulting from the order; 15
- (b) provision for the holding of an election for the police and crime commissioner for any police area resulting from the order.”
- (4) In subsection (2) –
- (a) omit “and” at the end of paragraph (a), and 20
- (b) after paragraph (b) insert “and
- “(c) to apply (with or without modification) any provision of, or made under, Chapter 6 of Part 1 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011.”
- (5) After subsection (2) insert – 25
- “(2A) An order under section 32 which includes provision within subsection (1A)(b) may, in particular require the election in question to be held before the alteration of police areas takes effect.”

Political Parties, Elections and Referendums Act 2000

- 8 The Political Parties, Elections and Referendums Act 2000 is amended as follows. 30
- 9 In section 5 (reports on elections and referendums) –
- (a) in subsection (2), after paragraph (e) insert –
- “(f) an ordinary election of police and crime commissioners.”; 35
- (b) in subsection (2A), omit “or” after paragraph (b), and after paragraph (c) insert “or
- (d) an election held under section 51 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (election to fill vacancy in office of police and crime commissioner),”. 40
- 10 In section 6A (attendance of representatives of Commission at elections), in

- subsection (5), after paragraph (d) insert –
- “(da) an election under section 51 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (election to fill vacancy in office of police and crime commissioner);”.
- 11 In section 7 (Commission to be consulted on changes to electoral law), in subsection (2), after paragraph (h) insert – 5
- “(ha) an order under subsection (1)(b) of section 54 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (designations of returning officers for elections of persons as police and crime commissioners in England and Wales); 10
- (hb) regulations under subsection (2) of that section (functions of returning officers and local returning officers for such elections);
- (hc) an order under section 58 of that Act (conduct of elections of persons as police and crime commissioners in England and Wales);”.
- 12 In section 8 (powers with respect to elections exercisable only on Commission recommendation), in subsection (3), after paragraph (c) insert –
- “(d) the making of orders under section 58 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 so far as relating to the matters mentioned in subsection (2)(d) of that section (limitation of expenses in connection with elections of persons as police and crime commissioners in England and Wales).” 20
- 13 In section 9A (setting of performance standards), in subsection (6), after paragraph (d) insert –
- “(da) an election under section 51 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (election to fill vacancy in office of police and crime commissioner);”.
- 14 In section 22 (parties to be registered in order to field candidates at elections), in subsection (5), after paragraph (e) insert –
- “(ea) elections of police and crime commissioners.”.

Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007

- 15 (1) Section 15 of the Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 (structural and boundary change in England: incidental etc provision in orders or regulations) is amended as follows. 35
- (2) In subsection (1) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “police authority” in both places where it occurs substitute “local policing body”; 40
- (b) after paragraph (f) insert –
- “(fa) as to who is to be a police and crime commissioner;”.
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) Provision falling within subsection (1)(fa) includes, in particular –
- (a) provision for the police and crime commissioner for a police area affected by an order by virtue of provision made under 45

- section 11(4)(g) to become the police and crime commissioner for a police area resulting from the order;
- (b) provision for the holding of an election for the police and crime commissioner for any police area resulting from the order.” 5
- (4) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) Without prejudice to subsection (2), an order under section 7 or 10 which includes provision within subsection (1A)(b) may, in particular, require the election in question to be held before the alteration of police areas takes effect.” 10

SCHEDULE 11

Section 89

CRIME AND DISORDER STRATEGIES

- 1 The Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is amended as follows.
- 2 (1) Section 5 (authorities responsible for strategies) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit subsection (1)(c). 15
- (3) For subsections (1A) and (1B) substitute –
- “(1A) The relevant local policing body in relation to two or more local government areas may make a combination agreement with the responsible authorities in relation to those areas (the “combined area”). 20
- (1B) A combination agreement is an agreement for the functions conferred by or under section 6 or by section 7 to be carried out in relation to the combined area as if it constituted only one local government area.
- (1BA) The responsible authorities in relation to a combined area are all the persons who are the responsible authorities in relation to each local government area that falls within the combined area. 25
- (1BB) Section 5A contains further provision about the making and contents of combination agreements.”.
- (4) In subsection (1C) for “An order under subsection (1A) above” substitute “A combination agreement”. 30
- (5) In subsection (1D), in the definition of “crime and disorder scrutiny functions”, for “an order under subsection (1A) above” substitute “a combination agreement”.
- (6) After subsection (1D) insert – 35
- “(1E) The “relevant local policing body”, in relation to a combined area, is –
- (a) if the area falls (wholly or partly) within the police area of a police and crime commissioner, the commissioner,
- (b) if the area falls (wholly or partly) within the metropolitan police district, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, and 40

- (c) if the area falls partly within the City of London, the Secretary of State.
- (1F) If there is more than one relevant local policing body in relation to a combined area by virtue of subsection (1E), the references in subsection (1A) above and section 5A(2) to the relevant local policing body in relation to the combined area are references to each of the relevant local policing bodies for that area acting jointly.”. 5
- (7) In subsection (2) for “those functions” substitute “the functions conferred by or under section 6”.
- (8) In subsection (5), omit— 10
- (a) the word “and” at the end of the definition of “fire and rescue authority”, and
- (b) the definition of “police authority”.
- 3 After section 5 insert—
- “5A Combination agreements: further provision 15**
- (1) A combination agreement for a combined area may only be made if every responsible authority in relation to that area is a party to the agreement.
- (2) The relevant local policing body for a combined area may enter into a combination agreement for that area only if it considers that it would be in the interests of one or more of the following to do so— 20
- (a) reducing crime and disorder;
- (b) reducing re-offending;
- (c) combating the misuse of drugs, alcohol and other substances.
- (3) Subsections (4) to (6) apply if a combined area in relation to a combination agreement includes (wholly or partly) the area of more than one police area. 25
- (4) The combination agreement must include arrangements for securing effective and efficient co-operation—
- (a) between each of the relevant local policing bodies in relation to the combined area, and 30
- (b) between the responsible authorities for the area and those relevant local policing bodies.
- (5) The Secretary of State must be a party to the agreement (if not already a party by virtue of being a relevant local policing body in relation to the combined area). 35
- (6) The Secretary of State may enter into the agreement only if the Secretary of State—
- (a) considers that it would be in the interests of one or more of the matters mentioned in subsection (2), and 40
- (b) is satisfied that the arrangements mentioned in subsection (4) are adequate for the purposes of securing effective and efficient co-operation in the carrying out of functions under section 6.
- (7) In the case of a combination agreement relating to local government areas in Wales— 45

- (a) if the combined area includes (wholly or partly) the area of one police area, the police and crime panel for that police area must be a party to the combination agreement; or
 - (b) if the combined area includes (wholly or partly) the area of two or more police areas, the police and crime panels for all of the police areas must be parties to the agreement. 5
 - (8) A combination agreement –
 - (a) must be in writing, and
 - (b) may be varied by a further combination agreement.
 - (9) A combination agreement may be terminated by agreement in writing between the parties to it; and subsection (2), and (as the case may be) (6)(a), applies to an agreement under this subsection. 10
 - (10) In this section “combination agreement”, “combined area” and “relevant local policing body” have the same meanings as in section 5.”. 15
- 4 (1) Section 6 (formulation and implementation of strategies) is amended as follows.
 - (2) In subsection (3) after paragraph (c) insert –
 - “(ca) the conferring of functions on a police and crime commissioner in relation to the formulation and implementation of a strategy for any local government area that lies in the police area of the commissioner;”.20
 - (3) After subsection (4) insert –
 - “(4A) Provision under subsection (3)(ca) may include provision –
 - (a) for a police and crime commissioner to arrange for meetings to be held for the purpose of assisting in the formulation and implementation of any strategy (or strategies) that the commissioner may specify that relate to any part of the police area of the commissioner, 25
 - (b) for the commissioner to chair the meetings, and 30
 - (c) for such descriptions and numbers of persons to attend the meetings as the commissioner may specify (including, in particular, representatives of the responsible authorities in relation to the strategies to be discussed at the meetings).”.
- 5 (1) Section 7 (supplemental) is amended as follows. 35
 - (2) In subsection (1) –
 - (a) for “Secretary of State” (in the first place) substitute “relevant local policing body for that area”, and
 - (b) for “the Secretary of State” (in the second place) substitute “that body”. 40
 - (3) After subsection (1) insert –
 - “(1A) The relevant local policing body in relation to a local government area may require a report under subsection (1) only if –
 - (a) the conditions in subsection (1B) are met, and
 - (b) where applicable, the condition in subsection (1C) is also met. 45

- (1B) The conditions referred to in subsection (1A)(a) are that –
- (a) the body is not satisfied that the responsible authorities for the area are carrying out their functions under section 6 in an effective and efficient manner, and
 - (b) the body considers it is reasonable and proportionate in all the circumstances to require a report. 5
- (1C) The condition referred to in subsection (1A)(b) is that, in the case of a local government area in Wales, the relevant local policing body has obtained the consent of the relevant police and crime panel to the issuing of the requirement.”. 10
- (4) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “Secretary of State” substitute “relevant local policing body”, and
 - (b) for “him” substitute “the body”.
- (5) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(4) “Relevant local policing body”, in relation to a local government area, means –
- (a) if the area (or any part of it) falls within the police area of a police and crime commissioner, the commissioner,
 - (b) if the area (or any part of it) falls within the metropolitan police district, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, and 20
 - (c) if the area (or any part of it) is the City of London, the Secretary of State.
- (5) “Relevant police and crime panel”, in relation to the relevant local policing body for a police area in Wales, means the police and crime panel for that police area. 25
- (6) If there is more than one relevant local policing body in relation to a combined area that is to be treated as one local government area under a combination agreement (see section 5(1A)) –
- (a) a report submitted under subsection (1) is to be submitted to each of the relevant local policing bodies for the combined area, and 30
 - (b) references in this section to any requirement or arrangement made by the relevant local policing body are references to a requirement or arrangement made by each of the relevant local policing bodies for the combined area acting jointly.”. 35

SCHEDULE 12

Section 90

COLLABORATION AGREEMENTS

- 1 The Police Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- 2 (1) Section 23 (police force collaboration agreements) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 40
- (2) In the title, for “**Police force collaboration agreements**” substitute “**Collaboration agreements involving police forces**”.
- (3) Omit subsection (1).

-
- (4) In subsection (2), for the words before paragraph (a) substitute –
 “(2) Force collaboration provision may, in particular, consist of provision –”.
- (5) Omit subsection (3).
- (6) In subsection (4), for “An agreement” substitute “A collaboration agreement”.
- (7) In subsection (5), for “an agreement” substitute “a collaboration agreement”.
- (8) Omit subsections (6), (7) and (8).
- 3 (1) Section 23A (police authority collaboration agreements) is amended in accordance with this section.
- (2) For the title substitute “**Collaboration agreements involving policing bodies**”.
- (3) Omit subsection (1).
- (4) In subsection (2) –
 (a) for the words before paragraph (a) substitute –
 “(2) Policing body collaboration provision, or policing body & force collaboration provision, may, in particular, consist of provision –”;
 (b) in paragraphs (a) and (b), for “authorities” substitute “policing bodies”;
 (c) in paragraph (c) –
 (i) for “an authority” substitute “a policing body”;
 (ii) for “another authority” (in each place) substitute “another policing body”.
- (5) In subsection (3), for “In this section” substitute “In relation to policing body collaboration provision, or policing body & force collaboration provision,”.
- (6) Omit subsection (4).
- (7) In subsection (5) –
 (a) for “A police authority may make an agreement” substitute “A policing body may make a collaboration agreement”;
 (b) for “police authorities” substitute “policing bodies”.
- (8) For subsection (6), substitute –
 “(6) A policing body must consult the chief officer of police of the police force which the body is responsible for maintaining before making a collaboration agreement (unless that chief officer is a party to the agreement).”.
- (9) Omit subsection (7).
- 4 (1) Section 23B (collaboration agreements: payments) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “relevant police authorities” substitute “parties to the agreement”.

- (3) In subsection (2) –
- (a) after “may” insert “in the case of policing bodies or chief officers of police who are parties to the agreement”;
 - (b) in paragraph (a), for “authorities” (in each place) substitute “policing bodies or chief officers of police”. 5
- (4) In subsection (3), for “A relevant police authority” substitute “A policing body or chief officer of police”.
- (5) Omit subsections (4) and (5).
- 5 (1) Section 23C (collaboration agreements: consultation and supplemental) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 10
- (2) Omit subsection (1).
- (3) After subsection (5) insert –
- “(6) If circumstances are such that one or more of the parties to a collaboration agreement would not, at a particular time, have power to enter into a collaboration agreement of that description (whether because of a failure to meet the requirements of section 22A(1) or (5) or otherwise) each person who does not have that power must cease to be a party to the agreement.”. 15
- 6 (1) Section 23D (collaboration agreements: accountability) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) In subsection (1) –
- (a) for “police force collaboration agreement” substitute “collaboration agreement”;
 - (b) for “police authority” substitute “policing body”.
- (3) In subsection (2), for “approving an agreement as mentioned in section 23(6), a police authority” substitute “making a collaboration agreement to which a chief officer of police is to be a party, a policing body”. 25
- (4) On subsection (3) –
- (a) for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “policing body”;
 - (b) for “consider making” substitute “make”. 30
- (5) In subsection (4), for “police authority” substitute “policing body”.
- 7 In section 23E (collaboration agreements: publication), in subsection (2), for the words before “must” substitute “In a case where information is notified to a chief officer of police under section 23D(2), that information”.
- 8 In section 23F (collaboration agreements: guidance), for “police authorities” (in each place) substitute “policing bodies”. 35
- 9 In section 23G (collaboration agreements: directions), in subsections (1) and (2), for “police authorities” substitute “policing bodies”.
- 10 After section 23H insert –
- “23HA Decisions about efficiency or effectiveness 40**
- In reaching a conclusion about whether or not a collaboration agreement is, or would be, in the interests of efficiency or

- effectiveness of one or more police forces (the “police forces under consideration”), a person must, in particular, consider –
- (a) the existing collaboration agreements, and other arrangements for co-operation, to which the police forces under consideration are parties; 5
 - (b) the desirability of police forces taking a consistent approach in making such agreements and other arrangements; and
 - (c) the opportunities available to the police forces under consideration to make such agreements and other arrangements.”. 10
- 11 (1) Section 23I (collaboration agreements: definitions) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “23” substitute “22A”.
- (3) In subsection (4), for the words before paragraph (a) insert –
- “(4) “Policing body” means – 15
 - (aa) a local policing body,”.
- (4) After subsection (4) insert –
- “(5) The following expressions have the meanings given in section 22A –
 - “collaboration agreement”;
 - “force collaboration provision”;
 - “policing body collaboration provision”;
 - “policing body & force collaboration provision”. 20
- (6) References to the police force which a policing body is responsible for maintaining include –
- (a) in the case of the British Transport Police Authority, the British Transport Police, and 25
 - (b) in the case of the Civil Nuclear Police Authority, the Civil Nuclear Constabulary.
- (7) References to a police force include –
- (a) references to the special constables appointed by a chief officer of police, and 30
 - (b) references to the civilian employees of the police force;
- and references to the members of a police force are to be read accordingly.
- (8) For that purpose “civilian employee” means – 35
- (a) in the case of a police force maintained under section 2 or 5A, the members of the civilian staff of that force;
 - (b) in the case of any other police force, the employees of the policing body responsible for maintaining that force who are under the direction and control of the chief officer of police of that force.”. 40

SCHEDULE 13

Section 91

POLICE POWERS FOR CIVILIAN EMPLOYEES UNDER COLLABORATION AGREEMENTS

Police Act 1996

1 After section 23A of the Police Act 1996 insert –

- | | |
|--|----|
| “23AA Force collaboration provision about civilian employees | 5 |
| (1) This section applies to force collaboration provision, contained in a collaboration agreement, which is about the discharge of functions by designated civilian employees of one police force (the “assisting force”) for the purposes of another police force (the “assisted force”). | |
| (2) The force collaboration provision must specify – | 10 |
| (a) the functions which the designated civilian employees are permitted by the collaboration agreement to discharge for the purposes of the assisted force, and | |
| (b) any restrictions or conditions on that permission for the designated civilian employees to discharge those functions. | 15 |
| (3) The force collaboration provision must not permit the designated civilian employees to discharge functions for the purposes of the assisted force unless those employees are, by virtue of the relevant section 38 designation, authorised to discharge those functions for the purposes of the assisting force. | 20 |
| (4) The force collaboration provision does not authorise the designated civilian employees to discharge functions for the purposes of the assisted force (but see section 38B of the Police Reform Act 2002). | |
| (5) References in this section to the discharge of functions by civilian employees of the assisting force for the purposes of the assisted force include references to – | 25 |
| (a) the joint discharge of functions by the civilian employees and members of the assisted police force, | |
| (b) the discharge of functions by the civilian employees in the assisted force’s area, and | 30 |
| (c) the provision of the civilian employees to the assisted force. | |
| (6) In this section – | |
| “designated”, in relation to a civilian employees of a police force, means designated by the chief officer of police of that force by a section 38 designation; | 35 |
| “relevant section 38 designation”, in relation to a designated civilian employees, means the section 38 designation relating to the employee; | |
| “section 38 designation” means a designation under section 38 of the Police Reform Act 2002.”. | 40 |

Police Reform Act 2002

2 The Police Reform Act 2002 is amended as follows.

3 After section 38A insert –

“38B Police powers for civilian employees under collaboration agreements

- (1) The chief officer of police of a police force (the “assisted force”) may designate a person (“C”) who –
 - (a) is a civilian employee of another police force (the “assisting force”), 5
 - (b) is designated under section 38 by the chief officer of police of the assisting police force (the “section 38 designation”), and
 - (c) is permitted, under relevant police collaboration provision, to discharge powers and duties specified in that provision for the purposes of the assisted force. 10
- (2) The designation under subsection (1) (the “collaboration designation”) must designate C as an officer of one or more of the descriptions specified in section 38(2).
- (3) The collaboration designation may designate C as an officer of a particular description specified in section 38(2) only if the section 38 designation designates C as an officer of that description. 15
- (4) C shall have the powers and duties conferred or imposed on C by the collaboration designation.
- (5) A power or duty may be conferred or imposed on C by the collaboration designation only if C is permitted, under the relevant police collaboration provision, to discharge that power or duty for the purposes of the assisted force. 20
- (6) C shall not be authorised or required by virtue of the collaboration designation to engage in any conduct otherwise than in the course of discharging a power or duty conferred or imposed on C by the collaboration designation. 25
- (7) The collaboration designation must specify the restrictions and conditions to which C is subject in the discharge of the powers and duties conferred or imposed by the collaboration designation. 30
- (8) Those restrictions and conditions must include the restrictions and conditions specified in the relevant police collaboration provision.
- (9) C is authorised or required to discharge any power or duty conferred or imposed by the collaboration designation subject to the restrictions and conditions specified in the collaboration designation. 35
- (10) References in this section to the discharge of functions by civilian employees of the assisting force for the purposes of the assisted force have the same meaning as in section 23B of the Police Act 1996.
- (11) In this section –
 - “civilian employee” has the meaning given by section 23I of the Police Act 1996; 40
 - “relevant police collaboration provision” means provision, contained in a collaboration agreement under section 22A of the Police Act 1996, which is of the kind referred to in section 23AA of that Act. 45

38C Designations under section 38B: supplementary provision

- (1) The collaboration designation of C must be in accordance with the relevant police collaboration provision.
 - (2) Subsection (1) is in addition to section 38B(5) and (8).
 - (3) Subsections (8) and (9) of section 38 apply to any power exercisable by C in reliance on the collaboration designation as they apply to a power exercisable by a person in reliance on a designation under section 38. 5
 - (4) In exercising or performing any power or duty in reliance on the collaboration designation, C is to be taken – 10
 - (a) as exercising or performing that power or duty in reliance on that collaboration designation (and not in reliance on any designation under section 38); and
 - (b) accordingly, as not being a designated person (within the meaning of section 46(1)) by virtue of any designation under section 38. 15
 - (5) Expressions used in this section and section 38B have the same meanings in this section as in section 38B.”.
- 4 (1) Section 42 (supplementary provisions relating to designations and accreditations) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 20
- (2) In subsection (1), after “section 38” insert “, 38B”.
 - (3) After subsection (2) insert –
 - “(2ZA) A power exercisable by any person in reliance on a designation under section 38B by the chief officer of police of the assisted force shall, subject to subsection (2A), be exercisable only by a person wearing such uniform as may be – 25
 - (a) determined or approved for the purposes of this Chapter by the chief officer of police of the assisting police force; and
 - (b) identified or described in the designation.
 In this subsection, “assisted force” and “assisting force” have the same meanings as in section 38B.”. 30
 - (4) In subsection (2A), after “subsection (2)” insert “or (2ZA)”.
 - (5) In subsection (2B), after “section 38” insert “(in relation to subsection (2)) or section 38B (in relation to subsection (2ZA))”.
 - (6) In subsection (3), after “section 38” insert “, 38B”. 35
 - (7) After subsection (7) insert –
 - “(7A) For the purposes of determining liability for the unlawful conduct of a civilian employee of a police force (within the meaning of section 38B), conduct by such an employee in reliance or purported reliance on a designation under section 38B shall be taken to be conduct in the course of the employee’s employment by the employer; and, in the case of a tort, that employer shall fall to be treated as a joint tortfeasor accordingly.”. 40
- 5 In section 46 (offences against designated and accredited persons etc), after

subsection (4) insert –

- “(5) References in this section to a designated person are to –
- (a) a designated person within the meaning given by section 47(1), and
 - (b) a person in relation to whom a designation under section 38B is for the time being in force.”. 5

Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003

- 6 In section 28 of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003 (exercise of powers by civilians), after subsection (1)(aa) insert –
- “(ab) sections 38B and 38C (police powers for civilian employees under collaboration agreements),”.
- 10

SCHEDULE 14

Section 98

TRANSITIONAL PROVISION

PART 1

CHIEF OFFICERS OF POLICE TO REMAIN IN POST 15

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996 if, immediately before section 2 comes into force in relation to that police area, a person is in post as the chief constable of the police force for that area.
- (2) That person becomes the new chief constable of that police force. 20
- (3) In this paragraph “new chief constable” means the chief constable established for that police area under section 2 of this Act.
- 2 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to the metropolitan police district if, immediately before section 4 comes into force, a person is in post as the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis. 25
- (2) That person becomes the new Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis.
- (3) In this paragraph “new Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis” means the new Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis established under section 4 of this Act.

PART 2 30

TRANSFER SCHEMES

Power to direct existing police authority to make transfer scheme

- 3 (1) The Secretary of State may direct an existing police authority –
- (a) to make one or more transfer schemes, and
 - (b) to submit such a scheme to the Secretary of State for approval. 35
- (2) If the Secretary of State gives a direction under sub-paragraph (1)(b), the Secretary of State may –

-
- (a) approve the scheme as submitted,
 - (b) approve the scheme with modifications, or
 - (c) reject the scheme.
- (3) Before making a decision under sub-paragraph (2), the Secretary of State must – 5
- (a) consult the existing police authority, and
 - (b) if the scheme includes provision about the transfer of staff, consult persons who, in the Secretary of State’s opinion, represent the views of the staff concerned.
- (4) If the Secretary of State gives a direction under sub-paragraph (1)(b), the existing police authority – 10
- (a) must not make the scheme unless the Secretary of State approves it, and
 - (b) if the Secretary of State approves the scheme with modifications, must make it with those modifications. 15
- (5) A direction under this paragraph –
- (a) must be in writing; and
 - (b) may be varied or revoked by a further direction.
- 4 (1) The Secretary of State may make one or more transfer schemes in relation to an existing police authority if – 20
- (a) the authority does not comply with a direction given to it under paragraph 3, or
 - (b) the Secretary of State decides not to approve one or more schemes submitted by that authority under paragraph 3.
- (2) A scheme made by the Secretary of State under this paragraph is to be treated as if made by the existing police authority. 25

Staff

- 5 (1) A transfer scheme may provide for a person employed by the existing police authority under section 15 of the Police Act 1996 to become – 30
- (a) a member of the staff of the new policing body,
 - (b) a member of the civilian staff of the police force, or
 - (c) a member of staff of a local authority.
- (2) The scheme may provide that a contract of employment which the person had before becoming a member of the staff of the new policing body is to have effect (subject to any modifications) as if originally made between that person and that body. 35
- (3) The scheme may provide that a contract of employment which the person had before becoming a member of the civilian staff of a police force is to have effect (subject to any modifications) as if originally made between that person and the chief officer. 40
- (4) The scheme may provide that a contract of employment which the person had before becoming a member of the staff of a local authority is to have effect (subject to any modifications) as if originally made between that person and that local authority.

-
- 6 (1) A transfer scheme may provide, in the case of a person who is seconded to the existing police authority, that the secondment is to have effect as a secondment to –
- (a) the staff of the new policing body,
 - (b) the civilian staff of the police force, or
 - (c) a member of staff of a local authority.
- (2) The scheme may make provision as to the terms and conditions which are to have effect as the terms and conditions of the person’s secondment.
- 7 (1) A transfer scheme may provide for the transfer to the new policing body of the rights, powers, duties and liabilities of the employer under or in connection with the contract of employment of a person who becomes a member of the staff of that body.
- (2) A transfer scheme may provide for the transfer to the chief officer of the rights, powers, duties and liabilities of the employer under or in connection with the contract of employment of a person who becomes a member of the civilian staff of the police force.
- (3) A transfer scheme may provide for the transfer to a local authority of the rights, powers, duties and liabilities of the employer under or in connection with the contract of employment of a person who becomes a member of the staff of that local authority.
- (4) A transfer scheme may make provision –
- (a) for periods before a person became a member of the staff of the new policing body to count as periods of employment with that body, and
 - (b) for periods before a person became a member of the staff of the new policing body, and the period after the person became a member of the staff of the new policing body, to count as a period of continuous employment.
- (5) A transfer scheme may make provision –
- (a) for periods before a person became a member of the civilian staff of the police force to count as periods of employment with the chief officer, and
 - (b) for periods before a person became a member of the civilian staff of the police force, and the periods after the person became a member of the civilian staff of the police force, to count as a period of continuous employment.
- (6) A transfer scheme may make provision –
- (a) for periods before a person became a member of the staff of a local authority to count as periods of employment with that local authority, and
 - (b) for periods before a person became a member of the staff of a local authority, and the period after the person became a member of the staff of the local authority, to count as a period of continuous employment.
- 8 (1) A transfer scheme may provide for a person who –
- (a) is employed by the existing police authority under section 15 of the Police Act 1996, and
 - (b) would otherwise, by the operation of the scheme, become –

- (i) a member of the staff of the new policing body,
 - (ii) a member of the civilian staff of the police force, or
 - (iii) a member of staff of a local authority,
- not to become such a member of staff if the person gives notice objecting to the operation of the scheme in relation to the person. 5
- (2) A person who would (but for this sub-paragraph) be treated as being dismissed by the operation of a transfer scheme (whether by an enactment or otherwise) is to be treated as not being so dismissed.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to a person who, by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), does not become a member of staff. 10

Property, rights and liabilities etc

- 9 (1) A transfer scheme may provide for the transfer of property, rights and liabilities of the existing police authority to—
- (a) the new policing body, or
 - (b) the chief officer. 15
- (2) The scheme may—
- (a) create rights, or impose liabilities, in relation to property, rights and liabilities transferred by virtue of the scheme, and
 - (b) apportion property, rights and liabilities between the new policing body and the chief officer. 20
- (3) The scheme may provide for things done by or in relation to the existing policing body, its staff, or the members of the police force, to be—
- (a) treated as done by, or in relation to, or
 - (b) continued by, or in relation to,
- the new policing body, the staff of the new policing body, the chief officer, the civilian staff of the police force, or the members of the police force. 25
- (4) The scheme may make provision about the continuation of legal proceedings.
- 10 A transfer scheme may provide for the new policing body, or the chief officer, to make any payment which— 30
- (a) before a day specified in the scheme could have been made out of the police fund of the existing police body, but
 - (b) is not a liability which can be transferred by virtue of paragraph 9.

Supplementary

- 11 (1) A transfer scheme may contain further provision in connection with any of the matters to which paragraphs 5 to 10 relate. 35
- (2) A transfer scheme may contain incidental, consequential, supplemental, transitional and saving provision.
- 12 (1) A transfer scheme may contain provision— 40
- (a) for the Secretary of State, or any other person nominated by or in accordance with the scheme, to determine any matter requiring determination under or in consequence of the scheme, and

- (b) as to the payment of fees charged, or expenses incurred, by any person nominated to determine any matter by virtue of sub-paragraph (a).

PART 3

OTHER TRANSITIONAL PROVISION

5

Politically restricted posts

- 13 (1) This paragraph applies to a person if –
 - (a) by virtue of a transfer scheme, the person ceases to be a member of the staff of an existing police authority and becomes a member of staff of a new policing body (the “transferred employment”), and 10
 - (b) the duties which the person carries out as a member of staff of the new policing body are the same, or substantially the same, as the duties the person carried out as a member of staff of the existing policing authority.
- (2) Section 1 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (politically restricted posts) does not apply to the person by virtue of the person holding the transferred employment. 15

Continuity

- 14 (1) The abolition of an existing police authority, the transfer or abolition of its functions, and the transfer of its property, rights and liabilities, do not affect the validity of anything done before the abolition or transfer. 20
- (2) Sub-paragraphs (3) to (5) apply where any functions, property, rights or liabilities are transferred by or under this Act from an existing police authority (the “transferor”) to another person (the “transferee”).
- (3) There may be continued in relation to the transferee anything (including legal proceedings) which – 25
 - (a) relates to any of the functions, property, rights or liabilities transferred, and
 - (b) is in the process of being done by or in relation to the transferor immediately before the transfer takes effect. 30
- (4) Anything which –
 - (a) was made or done by or in relation to the transferor for the purposes of, or otherwise in connection with, any of the functions, property, rights or liabilities transferred, and
 - (b) is in effect immediately before the transfer takes effect, 35
has effect as if made or done by or in relation to the transferee.
- (5) The transferee is to be substituted for the transferor in any instruments, contracts or legal proceedings which –
 - (a) relate to any of the functions, property, rights or liabilities transferred, and 40
 - (b) are made or commenced before the transfer takes effect.
- (6) The Secretary of State may, by direction, determine any question under this section as to –

- (a) whether any particular functions, property, rights or liabilities are transferred by or under this Act, or
 - (b) the person to which any particular functions, property, rights or liabilities are transferred by or under this Act.
- (7) The preceding provisions of this paragraph – 5
- (a) are without prejudice to any power to make a transfer scheme, and
 - (b) are subject to the provisions of any transfer scheme.
- (8) In this paragraph a reference to the transfer of a function of an existing police authority includes a reference to the abolition of the function and the conferral of a corresponding function on another person. 10

Power to make transitional provision etc

- 15 The Secretary of State may, by order, make such transitional and transitory provision, and savings, as the Secretary of State considers appropriate in connection with the abolition of the existing police authorities.

PART 4 15

INTERPRETATION

- 16 In this Schedule –
- “chief officer” means – 20
- (a) in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996, the chief constable established for that police area under section 2 of this Act;
 - (b) in relation to the metropolitan police district, the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis established under section 4;
- “existing police authority” means – 25
- (a) in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996, the police authority established under section 3 of that Act for that area;
 - (b) in relation to the metropolitan police district, the Metropolitan Police Authority; 30
- “local authority” means –
- (a) in relation to England, a county council or a district council;
 - (b) in relation to Wales, a county council or a county borough council;
- “new policing body” means – 35
- (a) in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996, the police and crime commissioner for that area;
 - (b) in relation to the metropolitan police district, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
- “police force” means – 40
- (a) in relation to a police area listed in Schedule 1 to the Police Act 1996, the police force maintained for that area under section 2 of that Act;
 - (b) in relation to the metropolitan police district, the metropolitan police force; 45

“transfer scheme”, in relation to an existing police authority, means a scheme for transferring staff, property, rights or liabilities of that authority.

SCHEDULE 15

Section 99

MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS IN RELATION TO PART 1 5

PART 1

POLICE ACT 1996

- 1 The Police Act 1996 is amended in accordance with this Part.
- 2 For the italic cross-heading before section 1 substitute –
- “Police areas and police forces”* 10
- 3 Omit the italic cross-heading before section 2.
- 4 (1) Section 2 (maintenance of police forces) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) The existing provision of section 2 becomes subsection (1) of that section.
- (3) After that subsection, insert – 15
- “(2) For further provision about the maintenance of those police forces, see Chapter 1 of Part 1 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011.”.
- 5 Omit –
- (a) sections 3 to 5, and 20
- (b) the italic cross-heading before section 5A.
- 6 (1) Section 5A (maintenance of the metropolitan police force) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) The existing provision of section 5A becomes subsection (1) of that section.
- (3) After that subsection, insert – 25
- “(2) For further provision about the maintenance of the metropolitan police force, see Chapter 2 of Part 1 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011.”.
- 7 Omit sections 5B to 6.
- 8 Before section 6ZA insert the following cross-heading – 30
- “The City of London”.*
- 9 (1) Section 6ZA (power to confer particular functions on police authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**the Common Council**”.
- (3) In subsection (1), for “police authorities” substitute “the Common Council”. 35

-
- (4) In subsection (2) –
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (b) for “police force maintained for its area” substitute “the City of London police force”;
 - (c) for “the authority” substitute “the Common Council”. 5
- (5) In subsection (3), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute –
- “(a) the Common Council,
 - (b) the Commissioner of Police for the City of London, and”.
- (6) Omit subsection (4).
- 10 (1) Section 6ZB (plans by police authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 10
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**the Common Council**”.
- (3) In subsection (1) –
- (a) for “every police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (b) for “the authority’s” substitute “the Common Council’s”; 15
 - (c) for “its area” substitute “the City of London police area”.
- (4) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (b) for “relevant chief officer of police” substitute “the Commissioner of Police for the City of London”; 20
 - (c) for “the authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (d) for “The authority” substitute “The Common Council”.
- (5) In subsection (4) –
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (b) for “relevant chief officer of police” (in each place) substitute “the Commissioner of Police for the City of London”; 25
 - (c) for “the authority” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (6) In subsection (8), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute –
- “(a) the Common Council,
 - (a) the Commissioner of Police for the City of London, and”.
- 30
- (7) Omit subsection (9).
- (8) Omit subsection (11).
- 11 (1) Section 6ZC (reports by police authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**the Common Council**”. 35
- (3) In subsection (1) –
- (a) for “police authorities” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (b) for “their areas” substitute “the City of London police area”.
- (4) In subsection (3), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute –
- “(a) the Common Council,
 - (a) the Commissioner of Police for the City of London, and”.
- 40
- (5) Omit subsection (4).

- (b) for “police authority” substitute “Common Council”;
(c) for “that authority” substitute “Common Council”.
- (7) In subsection (6) –
(a) for “police authority” substitute “Common Council”;
(b) for “the authority” substitute “the Common Council”. 5
- 21 After section 22 insert the following cross-heading –

“General provisions“.
- 22 (1) Section 24 (aid of one police force by another) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (3), for “sections 9A and 10(1)” substitute “sections 2 and 4 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 (“the 2011 Act”)”. 10
(3) For subsection (3A) substitute –
“(3A) While a member of the civilian staff of a police force maintained under section 2, or a member of the civilian staff of the metropolitan police force, is provided under this section for the assistance of another police force, that member of staff is, notwithstanding section 2 or 4 of the 2011 Act, under the direction and control of the chief officer of police of that other force.”. 15
- (4) In subsection (4) –
(a) for “police authority” (in both places) substitute “local policing body”; 20
(b) for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- (5) In subsection (4A) –
(a) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
(b) for “section 10(1)” substitute “sections 2 and 4 of the 2011 Act”.
- 23 In section 25(1) (provision of special services), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 25
- 24 (1) Section 26 (provision of advice and assistance to international organisations etc) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
(2) In subsection (1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
(3) In subsection (2) – 30
(a) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
(b) for “the authority” substitute “the body”.
- (4) In subsections (5) and (6), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 25 In section 27 (special constables), in subsection (2), for “police force collaboration agreement” substitute “collaboration agreement”. 35
- 26 In section 28 (police cadets), in subsection (3) –
(a) for “Without prejudice to subsection (2)” substitute “Accordingly”;
(b) for “the police authority that maintains a police force” substitute “the chief officer of a police force”. 40
- 27 (1) Section 30 (jurisdiction of constables) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.

- (2) In subsection (3A), for “section 24” substitute “section 22A”.
- (3) In subsection (3B), for “police force collaboration agreement under section 23” substitute “collaboration agreement under section 22A”.
- 28 For section 31 (rewards for diligence) substitute—
- “31 Rewards for diligence”** 5
- (1) The chief constable of a police force maintained under section 2 may grant to members of that police force rewards for exceptional diligence or other specially meritorious conduct.
- (2) The Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis may grant to members of the metropolitan police force rewards for exceptional diligence or other specially meritorious conduct. 10
- (3) The Common Council may, on the recommendation of the Commissioner of Police for the City of London, grant out of the City of London police fund to members of the City of London police force rewards for exceptional diligence or other specially meritorious conduct.”. 15
- 29 In section 32 (power to alter police areas by order), in subsection (3)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 30 In section 33 (objections to alterations proposed by Secretary of State), in subsection (1)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 20
- 31 (1) Section 39A (codes of practice for chief officers) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit subsection (3).
- (3) In subsection (4)—
- (a) for the words from “preparing” to “Agency” substitute “issuing or revising such a plan, the Secretary of State”; 25
- (b) for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners;
- (aa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime; 30
- (ab) the Common Council;”;
- (c) for “it” substitute “the Secretary of State”.
- 32 (1) Section 42A is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In the title, for “**removal of senior officers**” substitute “**exercise of powers under section 42**”. 35
- (3) In subsection (1), omit “9E, 11 or”.
- (4) In subsection (2), for paragraph (a) substitute—
- “(a) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;”.
- 33 (1) Section 53A (regulation of procedures and practices) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 40
- (2) In subsection (2), omit paragraph (b) (and the word “and” at the end of paragraph (a)).

- (3) In subsection (3), for paragraph (a) substitute –
 “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners;
 (aa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 (ab) the Common Council;”.
- (4) Omit subsection (5).
- (5) In subsection (6), omit paragraph (a).
- 34 (1) Section 57 (common services) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (4), for paragraph (a) substitute –
 “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners,
 (aa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime,
 (ab) the Common Council;”.
- (3) Omit subsections (5) and (6).
- 35 (1) Section 88 (liability of wrongful acts of constables) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsections (2)(b), (4) and (5)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In subsection (5A), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”.
- (4) In subsection (6), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”.
- 36 (1) Section 98 (cross-border aid of one police force by another) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (6) –
 (a) for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”;
 (b) for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- (3) Before subsection (7) insert –
 “(6B) In this section “local policing body” includes –
 (a) a police authority in Scotland, and
 (b) the Northern Ireland Policing Board.”.
- 37 Omit Schedules 2 and 2A.

PART 2

- GREATER LONDON AUTHORITY ACT 1999
- 38 The Greater London Authority Act 1999 is amended in accordance with this Part.
- 39 In section 45 (Mayor’s periodic report to Assembly), in subsection (7)(b), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.

- 40 In section 54 (discharge of functions by committees or single members), omit subsection (6).
- 41 In section 61 (power to require attendance at Assembly meetings), in subsection (12), omit paragraph (a).
- 42 In section 86 (provisions supplemental to section 85), in subsection (2), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”. 5
- 43 (1) Section 90 (the special item for the purposes of section 89) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”. 10
- (3) In subsection (2) –
- (a) for “Metropolitan Police Authority” (in each place) substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”;
- (b) in paragraph (b), for “that Authority” substitute “that Office”. 15
- 44 In section 389 (the Superannuation Act 1972), in subsection (1)(d), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.
- 45 In section 404 (discrimination), in subsection (1)(b), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”. 20
- 46 In section 411 (pensions), omit subsection (9).
- 47 In section 419 (taxation), in subsection (1)(b), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.
- 48 In Schedule 4 (exercise of functions during vacancy or temporary incapacity of Mayor), omit – 25
- (a) paragraph 9, and
- (b) paragraph 17.

PART 3

OTHER ENACTMENTS

- Local Government (Records) Act 1962* 30
- 49 The Local Government (Records) Act 1962 is amended as follows.
- 50 In section 2 (acquisition and deposit of records), omit the words from “to a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority,”.
- 51 In section 8 (interpretation), omit the words from “a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority,”. 35
- Local Government Act 1972*
- 52 The Local Government Act 1972 is amended as follows.
- 53 In section 99 (meetings and proceedings of local authorities), omit the words from “police authorities” to “Metropolitan Police Authority,”.

-
- 54 (1) Section 100J (application to new authorities, Common Council, etc) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit paragraphs (e) and (eza).
- (3) In subsection (3), omit “, (e), (eza)”.
- (4) In subsection (4)(a) – 5
- (a) after “economic prosperity board,” insert “or”;
- (b) omit the words from “or a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority”.
- 55 (1) Section 107 (application of foregoing provisions to police authorities) is amended as follows. 10
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (3) For subsection (1) substitute –
- “(1) In their application to the Common Council as police authority, sections 101 to 106 shall have effect subject to the following provisions of this section (and in those provisions references to the Common Council are references to the Council as police authority).” 15
- (4) In subsection (2) –
- (a) for “A police authority” substitute “The Common Council”;
- (b) for “another police authority” substitute “another local policing body”; 20
- (c) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (5) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
- (b) for the words from “by” to the end substitute “by the Common Council”. 25
- (6) In subsection (3A) –
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
- (b) for “the authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
- (c) for “the authority’s” substitute “the Common Council’s”.
- (7) In subsection (3B) – 30
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
- (b) for “an authority” substitute “the Common Council”;
- (c) for “that authority” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (8) In subsection (4) –
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”; 35
- (b) for “the authority” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (9) In subsection (4A)(c), for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (10) In subsection (5), for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”.
- (11) Omit subsection (7). 40
- (12) In subsection (8)
- (a) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council”;

- (b) for “any such authority or authorities” substitute “the Common Council”;
 - (c) for the words from “by” to the end, substitute “by the Common Council”.
- 56 (1) Schedule 12 (meetings and proceedings of local authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 5
- (2) In paragraph 6, omit the words from “or a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority”.
- (3) In paragraph 6B, omit sub-paragraph (b) (and the word “and” that precedes it.) 10
- (4) In paragraph 46, omit the words from “and a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority”.

Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974

- 57 (1) In the Health and Safety at Work etc Act 1974, section 51A (application of Part to police) is amended as follows. 15
- (2) In subsection (2) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “means the chief officer of police” substitute “means –
 - (i) the chief officer of police of that force, or
 - (ii) in the case of a member of the force or a special constable who is, by virtue of a collaboration agreement under section 22A of the Police Act 1996, under the direction and control of a chief officer (within the meaning given by section 23I of that Act), that chief officer;” 20 25
 - (b) in paragraph (c), for “means the person who has the direction and control of the body of constables or cadets in question” substitute “means –
 - (i) the person who has the direction and control of the body of constables or cadets in question, or
 - (ii) in the case of a constable who is, by virtue of a collaboration agreement under section 22A of the Police Act 1996, under the direction and control of a chief officer (within the meaning given by section 23I of that Act), that chief officer.” 30 35
- (3) In subsection (2A), after “shall” insert “, if not a corporation sole,”.

Local Government Act 1974

- 58 In section 25 of the Local Government Act 1974 (authorities subject to investigation), in subsection (1), for paragraphs (ca) and (caa) substitute – 40
- “(ca) any police and crime commissioner;
 - (caa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;”.

Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976

- 59 The Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976 is amended as follows.
- 60 In section 30 (power to forego repayments of advances of remuneration paid to deceased employees), after subsection (3) insert – 5
- “(4) In subsection (3) the reference to a police authority does not include a police and crime commissioner or the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.”.
- 61 In section 44 (interpretation etc of Part 1), in subsection (1), in paragraph (a) of the definition of “local authority”, omit the words from “a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority”. 10

Police Pensions Act 1976

- 62 The Police Pensions Act 1976 is amended as follows.
- 63 In section 1 (police pensions regulations), in subsection (2A), for “police authorities” substitute “police pension authorities”. 15
- 64 In section 6 (appeals), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “police pension authority”.
- 65 In section 8A (information in connection with police pensions etc), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “police pension authority”.
- 66 (1) Section 11 (interpretation) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 20
- (2) In subsection (2), the second paragraph (g) becomes paragraph (h).
- (3) In subsection (2), for the words before paragraph (a), substitute –
- “(2) In this Act –
- “police pension authority” means –
- (a) the chief constable of any police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996; 25
- (b) the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;
- (c) the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as a police authority; and
- (d) any police authority within the meaning of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967; 30
- “pension supervising authority” means –
- (a) any local policing body within the meaning of the Police Act 1996; and
- (b) any police authority within the meaning of the Police (Scotland) Act 1967. 35
- (2A) But –”
- (and, accordingly, paragraphs (a) to (h) of subsection (2) become those paragraphs of subsection (2A)).
- (4) In subsection (2A), in paragraphs (a) to (h), for “it” (in each place) substitute ““police pension authority” or “pension supervising authority””. 40

- 67 In Schedule 1 (pensions under repealed enactments), in paragraph 2 (forfeiture of pensions), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “pension supervising authority”.

Race Relations Act 1976

- 68 In Schedule 1A to the Race Relations Act 1976 (bodies and other persons subject to general statutory duty), in Part 1, omit paragraphs 55 and 57. 5

Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980

- 69 The Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980 is amended as follows.
- 70 In section 99 (directions to dispose of land – supplementary), in subsection (4) omit paragraphs (dc) and (dcc). 10
- 71 In Schedule 16 (bodies to whom Part 10 applies), omit paragraphs 5C and 5CC.

Aviation Security Act 1982

- 72 The Aviation Security Act 1982 is amended as follows.
- 73 In section 24AG (security executive groups), in subsection (2)(c), at the beginning insert “in the case of an aerodrome in Scotland or Northern Ireland,”. 15
- 74 In section 24AT (interpretation), in subsection (6)(c), at the beginning insert “in the case of an aerodrome in Scotland or Northern Ireland,”.
- 75 (1) Section 25B (police services agreements) is amended as follows. 20
- (2) In subsection (4)(b), at the beginning insert “in the case of an aerodrome in Scotland or Northern Ireland,”.
- (3) After subsection (4) insert –
- “(4A) Before entering into a police services agreement relating to an aerodrome in England or Wales, or a variation of such an agreement, the chief officer of police for the relevant police area must consult the local policing body for that area.”. 25
- 76 In section 25E (discharge of functions of relevant persons in relation to police services agreements), in subsection (2)(c), at the beginning insert “in the case of an aerodrome in Scotland or Northern Ireland,”. 30
- 77 In section 26 (exercise of police functions at relevant aerodromes), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body or police authority”.
- 78 In section 29 (control of road traffic at relevant aerodromes), for “police authority” substitute “chief officer of police (in the case of an aerodrome in England or Wales) or the police authority (in any other case)”. 35
- 79 In section 29D (dispute resolution: powers), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body or police authority”.
- 80 (1) Section 31 (interpretation of Part 3 etc) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 40

(2)	In subsection (1), in the definition of “relevant persons”, at the end insert “, as read with subsection (1ZA) below”.	
(3)	After subsection (1) insert –	
“(1ZA)	In relation to a dispute about payments to be made which is within section 29A(2)(d) and concerns an aerodrome in England or Wales, “relevant persons” includes the local policing body for relevant police area.”.	5
<i>Local Government Act 1986</i>		
81	The Local Government Act 1986 is amended as follows.	
82	In section 6 (interpretation and application of Part 2), in subsection (2)(a), for the words from “a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute –	10
	“a police and crime commissioner, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.	
83	In section 9 (interpretation and application of Part 3), in subsection (1)(a), for the words from “a police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute –	15
	“a police and crime commissioner, the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.	
<i>Local Government Act 1988</i>		
84	In the Local Government Act 1988, in Schedule 2 (public supply or works contracts: the public authorities), omit the words from “A police authority” to “Metropolitan Police Authority”.	20
<i>Local Government Finance Act 1988</i>		
85	The Local Government Finance Act 1988 is amended as follows.	25
86	In section 74 (levies), in subsection (4)(bb), for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.	
87	In section 111 (interpretation) –	
	(a) in subsection (2), for paragraph (e) substitute –	
	“(e) a police and crime commissioner,	30
	(ea) a chief officer of police (which, for this purpose, means a chief constable of a police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996 or the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis);”;	
	(b) in subsection (3), at the end insert “and the 2011 Act is the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011”.	35
88	In section 112 (financial administration as to certain authorities), omit subsection (2)(a).	
89	(1) Section 114 (functions of responsible officer as respects reports) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.	40
	(2) In subsection (1), after “1999 Act” insert “, or Schedule 1, 2 or 4 to the 2011 Act”.	

- (3) In subsection (2), for “a police force maintained by the authority” insert “the relevant police force”.
- (4) In subsection (3A), after “relevant authority” insert “(except where the relevant authority is a chief officer of police)”.
- (5) For subsection (4)(b) substitute – 5
- “(b) in the case of –
- (i) a police and crime commissioner, the commissioner and each member of the police and crime panel for the commissioner’s police area;
- (ii) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime, that Office and each member of the police and crime panel of the London Assembly; 10
- (iii) a chief officer of police, the chief officer and the elected local policing body; and
- (iv) any other relevant authority, each person who is at that time a member of the authority; and” 15
- (6) After subsection (8) insert –
- “(8A) In this section “relevant police force”, in relation to the chief finance officer of a relevant authority, means –
- (a) in the case where the relevant authority is a chief officer of police, the police force of which that person is chief officer; 20
- (b) in any other case, the police force maintained by the relevant authority.”.
- 90 (1) Section 115 (authority’s duties as regards reports) is amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (1A) insert – 25
- “(1B) In the case of report made by the chief finance officer of an elected local policing body, that body must consider the report and decide whether the body agrees or disagrees with the views contained in the report and what action (if any) the body proposes to take in consequence of it. 30
- (1C) In the case of a report made by the chief finance officer of a chief officer of police, the chief officer of police must consider the report and decide whether the chief officer of police agrees or disagrees with the views contained in the report and what action (if any) the chief officer of police proposes to take in consequence of it. 35
- (1D) The consideration and decision-making must be concluded not later than the end of the period of 21 days beginning with the day on which copies of the report are sent.
- (1E) As soon as practicable after the elected local policing body, or the chief officer of police, has concluded the consideration of the chief finance officer’s report, that body or chief officer must prepare a report which specifies – 40
- (a) what action (if any) that body or chief officer has taken in response to the report;
- (b) what action (if any) that body or chief officer proposes to take in response to the report; and 45

- (c) the reasons for taking the action specified in the report or, as the case may be, for taking no action.
- (1F) As soon as practicable after the elected local policing body has prepared a report under subsection (1E), the elected local policing body must arrange for a copy of the report to be sent to – 5
- (a) the chief finance officer;
- (b) the person who at the time the report is made has the duty to audit the elected local policing body’s accounts; and
- (c) each member of the police and crime panel for the police area for which the elected policing body is established. 10
- (1G) As soon as practicable after the chief officer of police has prepared a report under subsection (1E), the chief officer of police must arrange for a copy of the report to be sent to –
- (a) the chief finance officer;
- (b) the person who at the time the report is made has the duty to audit the chief officer’s accounts; and 15
- (c) the elected local policing body which maintains the police force in which the chief officer serves.”.
- (3) In subsection (2), at the beginning insert “In the case of any authority other than an elected local policing body or a chief officer of police,”. 20
- (4) In subsection (9), after “subsection” insert “(1B), (1C) or”.
- (5) In subsection (10), after “subsection” insert “(1B), (1C)”.
- (6) In subsection (11), for “at the meeting” substitute “under subsection (1B), (1C) or (2)”.
- 91 (1) Section 116 (information about meetings) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 25
- (2) In the title, for “**meetings**” substitute “**consideration of reports etc**”.
- (3) After subsection (2A) insert –
- “(2B) In the case of an elected local policing body, the chief finance officer of that body must notify the body’s auditor of any decisions taken by the body in accordance with section 115. 30
- (2C) In the case of a chief officer of police, the chief officer of police’s chief finance officer must notify that chief officer of police’s auditor of any decisions taken by the chief officer of police in accordance with section 115.”. 35

Local Government and Housing Act 1989

- 92 The Local Government and Housing Act 1989 is amended as follows.
- 93 In section 1 (disqualification and political restriction of certain officers and staff), after subsection (8) insert –
- “(9) In this section a reference to a person holding a politically restricted post under a local authority include a reference to every member of the staff of an elected local policing body.”. 40

- 94 (1) Section 4 (designation and reports of head of paid service) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) In the case of an elected local policing body, the body’s chief executive is to be taken to have been designated as the head of the body’s paid service (and, accordingly, subsection (1)(a) does not apply; but references to persons designated under this section include references to the body’s chief executive).” 5
- (3) In subsection (4), for “sent to” substitute “sent –
- (a) in the case of an elected local policing body, to the body and to the police and crime panel for the body’s police area; and 10
- (b) in any other case, to”.
- (4) In subsection (5), after “relevant authority” insert “(other than an elected local policing body)”.
- (5) After subsection (5) insert – 15
- “(5A) It shall be the duty of an elected local policing body to consider any report under this section by the head of the body’s paid service, and to do so no later than three months after the body is sent a copy of the report.”.
- (6) In subsection (6)(a), after “below” insert “and an elected local policing body”. 20
- 95 (1) Section 5 (designation and reports of monitoring officer) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), in the words after paragraph (b), omit the words from “(or,” to “authority” (in the last place). 25
- (3) After subsection (1B) insert –
- “(1C) In the case of an elected local policing body, the body’s chief executive is to be taken to have been designated as the monitoring officer (and, accordingly, subsection (1)(a) does not apply; but references to persons designated under this section include references to the body’s chief finance officer).” 30
- (4) In subsection (3)(b), for “sent to” substitute “sent –
- (a) in the case of an elected local policing body, to the body and to the police and crime panel for the body’s police area; and 35
- (b) in any other case, to”.
- (5) In subsection (5)(a), for “deputy at” substitute “deputy –
- (i) in the case of an elected local policing body, no later than three months after the body is sent a copy of the report; and
- (ii) in any other case, at”. 40
- (6) In subsection (8) –
- (a) in the definition of “chief finance officer”, after “1999” insert “, Schedule 1 to the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011”;

- (b) in paragraph (a) of the definition of “relevant authority”, after “below” insert “and an elected local policing body”.
- 96 In section 7 (all staff to be appointed on merit), in subsection (1) –
- (a) in paragraph (a), omit “or”;
- (b) after paragraph (a) insert – 5
- “(aa) an elected local policing body, or”.
- 97 (1) Section 21 (interpretation of Part 1) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit paragraph (g).
- 98 In section 67 (application of, and orders under, Part 5), in subsection (3), omit paragraph (i). 10
- 99 (1) Section 155 (emergency financial assistance to local authorities) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1A), in paragraph (b) for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”. 15
- (3) In subsection (4), for paragraph (ea) substitute –
- “(ea) a police and crime commissioner;”.
- Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994*
- 100 (1) The Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 79A (meaning of “local authority” in England), omit paragraph (o). 20
- (3) In section 79B (meaning of “local authority” in England), omit paragraph (g).
- Value Added Tax Act 1994*
- 101 In section 33 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994 (refunds of VAT in certain cases), in subsection (3)(f), for “police authority” substitute “a police and crime commissioner and the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”. 25
- Audit Commission Act 1998*
- 102 The Audit Commission Act 1998 is amended as follows.
- 103 (1) Section 32 (documents relating to police authorities etc) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 30
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from “relates” to the end, substitute “relates to an elected local policing body or to a chief officer of police.”
- (3) In subsection (2) –
- (a) in paragraph (a) –
- (i) for the words from “relates” to “1996” substitute “relates to one or more elected local policing bodies”; 35
- (ii) for “an authority” substitute “a body”;

- (b) after paragraph (a) insert—
 “(aa) relates to one or more chief officers of police and has been sent (or a copy of which has been sent) by the Commission to such a chief officer.”.
- (4) For subsection (3) substitute— 5
 “(3) In this section “chief officer of police” means—
 (a) a chief constable for a police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996, and
 (b) the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis.”.
- 104 In section 32B (mandatory provision of data), omit subsection (5)(c). 10
- 105 In section 47A (reports relating to performance of English local authorities), in subsection (5), omit the words from “, other” to the end.
- 106 In Schedule 2 (accounts subject to audit), in paragraph 1, for sub-paragraph (k) substitute— 15
 “(k) a police and crime commissioner;
 (ka) a chief constable for a police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996;
 (kb) the Commissioner of Police of the Metropolis;”.
- Crime and Disorder Act 1998*
- 107 The Crime and Disorder Act 1998 is amended as follows. 20
- 108 In section 1A (power of Secretary of State to add relevant bodies), in subsection (1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 109 In section 17 (duty to consider crime and disorder implications), in subsection (2), for “a police authority” substitute “a local policing authority”.
- 110 (1) In section 18 (interpretation of Chapter 1 of Part 1), subsection (1) is amended as follows. 25
(2) After the definition of “local child curfew scheme” insert—
 ““local policing body” has the meaning given by section 101(1) of the Police Act 1996;”.
- (3) Omit the definition of “police authority”. 30
- 111 In section 38 (local provision of youth justice services), in subsection (2)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 112 In section 41 (the Youth Justice Board), in subsection (10), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 113 In section 42 (interpretation of Chapter 1 of Part 1), in subsection (1), omit the definition of “police authority”. 35
- 114 In section 115 (disclosure of information), in subsection (2)(c), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.

Regional Development Agencies Act 1998

- 115 In the Regional Development Agencies Act 1998, in section 7A (the London Development Agency Strategy), in subsection (5)(b) for “Metropolitan Police Authority” substitute “Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime”.

Local Government Act 1999

5

- 116 The Local Government Act 1999 is amended as follows.
- 117 (1) Section 1 (best value authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (d) substitute –
- “(d) the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as a police authority;”.
- (3) Omit subsection (4).

10

- 118 In section 3A (involvement of local representatives), in subsection (3), for paragraph (a) substitute –
- “(a) the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as a police authority;”.

15

- 119 In section 10 (inspections), omit subsection (5).

- 120 Omit section 10A (inspections: Auditor General for Wales).

- 121 In section 23 (accounts), in subsection (4), omit paragraph (za).

- 122 In section 29 (modifications for Wales), in subsection (1), omit the words from “except” to the end.

20

Freedom of Information Act 2000

- 123 In Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (public authorities), in Part 5, for paragraphs 57 and 58 substitute –
- “57 A police and crime commissioner.
- 58 The Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime.”.

25

Local Government Act 2000

- 124 The Local Government Act 2000 is amended as follows.

- 125 In section 21C (reports and recommendations of overview and scrutiny committees: duties of certain partner authorities), in subsection (8), in the definition of “relevant partner authority”, omit paragraph (a).

30

- 126 In section 21E (overview and scrutiny committees of certain district councils: functions with respect to partner authorities), in subsection (4)(a)(ii), in the definition of “relevant partner authority”, omit sub-paragraph (a).

- 127 In section 22A (overview and scrutiny committees of certain authorities in England: provision of information etc by certain partner authorities), in subsection (6), in the definition of “associated authority”, omit paragraph (b)(i).

35

- 128 (1) Section 49 (principles governing conduct of members of relevant authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit “and police authorities in Wales”.
- (3) In subsection (2), omit “(other than police authorities)”.
- (4) Omit subsection (4). 5
- (5) In subsection (6), omit paragraph (m).
- 129 (1) Section 50 (model codes of conduct) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit “and police authorities in Wales”.
- (3) In subsection (2), omit “other than police authorities”. 10
- 130 (1) Section 51 (duty of relevant authorities to adopt codes of conduct) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (4A), omit “or police authority in Wales”.
- (3) In subsection (4C), omit “other than a police authority”.
- (4) In subsection (6)(c)(i), omit “or a police authority in Wales”. 15
- 131 (1) Section 53 (standards committees) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsections (3) and (4), omit “or a police authority in Wales”.
- (3) In subsections (6)(a) and (7)(a), omit “and police authorities in Wales”.
- (4) In subsection (9), omit “and a police authority in Wales”. 20
- (5) In subsection (10), omit “or a police authority in Wales”.
- (6) In subsection (11)(a), omit “other than police authorities”.
- 132 (1) Section 54 (functions of standards committees) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (4), omit “and police authorities in Wales”. 25
- (3) In subsection (5), omit “(other than police authorities)”.
- (4) In subsection (6), omit “and police authorities in Wales”.
- (5) In subsection (7), omit “(other than police authorities)”.
- 133 (1) Section 54A (sub-committees of standards committees) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 30
- (2) In subsection (4), omit “or of a police authority in Wales”.
- (3) In subsection (5), omit “other than a police authority”.
- 134 In section 57 (Standards Board for England), in subsection (5)(b) and (c), omit “and police authorities in Wales”.
- 135 In section 68 (Public Services Ombudsman for Wales), in subsection (2)(a) and (b), omit “(other than police authorities)”. 35

-
- 136 In section 73 (matters referred to monitoring officers), omit subsection (6).
- 137 (1) Section 81 (disclosure and registration of members' interests etc) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (7)(b), omit “or a police authority in Wales”.
- (3) In subsection (8), omit “(other than police authorities)”. 5
- 138 (1) Section 82 (code of conduct for local government employees) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (1), omit “and police authorities in Wales”.
- (3) In subsection (2), omit “(other than police authorities)”.
- 139 In section 83 (interpretation of Part 3), in subsection (1), omit the definition of “police authority”. 10

Police Reform Act 2002

- 140 The Police Reform Act 2002 is amended as follows.
- 141 (1) Section 10 (general functions of the Commission) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 15
- (2) In subsection (1), in paragraphs (a) and (f), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- (3) In subsection (3)(d), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 142 In section 11 (reports to the Secretary of State), in subsections (6)(a), (7)(a), (9) and (10)(b), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 20
- 143 In section 12 (complaints, matters and persons to which Part 2 applies), in subsection (7) –
- (a) after paragraph (a) insert –
- “(aa) he is a civilian employee of a police force”;
- (b) in paragraph (b), for “police authority” substitute “the Common Council of the City of London”. 25
- 144 In section 14 (direction and control matters) –
- (a) in subsection (2), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”;
- (b) in subsection (3), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 30
- 145 (1) Section 15 (general duties of police authorities, chief constables and inspectors) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**local policing bodies**”.
- (3) In subsections (1)(a) and (3)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 35
- (4) In subsection (3)(c), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (5) In subsections (4)(a), (5)(a), (6) and (8A), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.

-
- 146 (1) Section 16 (payment for assistance with investigations) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsection (3) –
- (a) for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) in paragraph (b)(i), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”. 5
- (3) In subsection (4) –
- (a) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) in paragraph (b)(i), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”. 10
- (4) In subsection (5), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (5) In subsection (6), for “police authorities” (in each place) substitute “local policing bodies”.
- 147 (1) Section 16A (police investigations: National Police Improvement Agency involvement) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 15
- (2) In subsection (1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In subsection (7) –
- (a) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) in paragraph (b)(i), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”. 20
- 148 In section 17 (provision of information to the Commission), in subsections (1)(a), (2), (4) and (6), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 149 In section 18 (inspections of police premises on behalf of commission) –
- (a) in subsection (1)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”; 25
 - (b) in subsection (5)(b), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- 150 In section 20 (duty to keep the complainant informed), in subsection (8), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 151 (1) Section 22 (power of Commission to issue guidance) is amended as follows. 30
- (2) In subsection (1)(a), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- (3) In subsection (3), for paragraph (a) substitute –
- “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners; 35
 - (aa) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;
 - (ab) the Common Council;”.
- 152 In section 23 (regulations), in subsection (2)(n), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- 153 In section 24 (consultation on regulations), for paragraph (b) substitute – 40
- “(b) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners;
 - (ba) the Mayor’s Office for Policing and Crime;

- (bb) the Common Council;”.
- 154 (1) Section 26 (forces maintained otherwise than by police authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**local policing bodies**”.
- (3) In subsections (1)(b) and (2), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 5
- 155 In section 29 (interpretation of Part 2), in subsection (1) –
- (a) in the definition of “appropriate authority” –
- (i) for “a senior officer” (in each place) substitute “the chief officer”; 10
- (ii) for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”;
- (b) in the definition of “relevant force”, for paragraph (a) substitute –
- “(a) if that authority is a local policing body, the police force which the body is responsible for maintaining; and”; 15
- (c) omit the definition of “senior officer”.
- 156 (1) Section 38 (police powers for police authority employees) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In the title, for “**police authority employees**” substitute “**civilian staff**”. 20
- (3) In subsection (1), for the words from “designate” to “officer” substitute “designate a relevant employee as an officer”.
- (4) In subsection (7), for “An employee of a police authority” substitute “A relevant employee”.
- (5) After subsection (9) insert – 25
- “(11) In this section “relevant employee” means –
- (a) in the case of –
- (i) a police force maintained for a police area in accordance with section 2 of the Police Act 1996, or
- (ii) the police force maintained for the metropolitan police district in accordance with section 5A of that Act, 30
- a member of the civilian staff of that police force (within the meaning of Part 1 of the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011); 35
- (b) in any other case, a person who –
- (i) is employed by the police authority maintaining that force, and
- (ii) is under the direction and control of the chief officer making a designation under subsection (1).” 40
- 157 In section 38A (standard powers and duties of community support officers), in subsection (3), for paragraph (a) substitute –
- “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners; and”.

- 158 (1) Section 39 (police powers for contracted out staff) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsections (1) and (2), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In subsection (11), for paragraph (a) substitute – 5
 “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners; and”.
- (4) In subsection (13)(b), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 159 (1) Section 40 (community safety accreditation schemes) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 10
- (2) In subsection (4)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In subsection (7), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body”.
- 160 In section 42 (supplementary provisions relating to designations and accreditations), in subsection (7) – 15
- (a) for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “chief officer of police or local policing body”;
- (b) for “that authority” substitute “that chief officer or body”.
- 161 In section 43 (railway safety accreditation scheme), in subsection (9), for paragraph (c) substitute – 20
- “(c) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners; and”.
- 162 In section 45 (code of practice relating to chief officers’ powers under Chapter 1), in subsection (3), for paragraph (c) substitute – 25
- “(c) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners; and”.
- 163 (1) Section 51 (independent custody visitors for places of detention) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In subsections (1), (2)(a) and (3), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 30
- (3) In subsection (6), for “police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”.
- (4) In subsection (7), for paragraph (a) substitute –
- “(a) such persons as appear to the Secretary of State to represent the views of police and crime commissioners;”.
- (5) In subsection (9), for “Police authorities” substitute “local policing bodies”. 35
- 164 (1) In Schedule 3 (handling of complaints and conduct matters etc), Part 1 (handling of complaints) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In paragraph 1 – 40
- (a) in sub-paragraphs (1), (2)(b) and (5), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
- (b) in sub-paragraph (6), for “police authority” substitute “local policing”.

-
- (3) In paragraph 2(1)(a), (2), (5), and (6)(a) and (c), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (4) In paragraph 3(1), (2), (3), (4) (in each place), and (6) (in each place), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (5) In paragraph 4(3) (in each place), (5)(b), and (6), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 5
- (6) In paragraph 5(1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 165 (1) In Schedule 3 (handling of complaints and conduct matters etc), Part 2 (handling of conduct matters) is amended in accordance with this paragraph. 10
- (2) In paragraph 10(1)(a) (in each place) and (3), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In paragraph 11(1)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (4) In paragraph 12 –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”; 15
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (5), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (c) in sub-paragraph (6), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 20
- (5) In paragraph 13 –
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (3) –
 - (i) for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”; 25
 - (ii) in sub-paragraph (b), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (c) in sub-paragraphs (5)(b) and (6)(a), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (6) In paragraph 14(1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 30
- 166 (1) In Schedule 3 (handling of complaints and conduct matters etc), Part 2A (handling of death and serious injury matters) is amended in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) In paragraph 14A(1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (3) In paragraph 14B – 35
- (a) in sub-paragraphs (1)(a) and (5), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”;
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (6), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- (4) In paragraph 14D(1), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 40
- 167 In Schedule 4 (powers exercisable by police civilians), in paragraph 7 (confiscation of tobacco etc), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.

Local Government Act 2003

- 168 The Local Government Act 2003 is amended as follows.
- 169 In section 23 (meaning of “local authority”), in subsection (1), for paragraph (n) substitute –
- “(n) a police and crime commissioner;” 5
- 170 In section 25 (budget calculations: report on robustness of estimates etc), in subsection (3) –
- (a) in paragraph (d), omit “or”;
- (b) at the end of paragraph (e), insert “or
- (f) Schedule 1, 2 or 4 to the Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011”. 10

Children Act 2004

- 171 The Children Act 2004 is amended as follows.
- 172 In section 10 (co-operation to improve well-being: England), in subsection (4)(b), for “the police authority” substitute “the local policing body”. 15
- 173 In section 11 (arrangements to safeguard and promote welfare: England), in subsection (4)(h), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”.
- 174 In section 25 (co-operation to improve well-being: Wales), in subsection (4)(a), for “the police authority” substitute “the local policing body”.
- 175 In section 28 (arrangements to safeguard and promote welfare: Wales), in subsection (1)(d), for “police authority” substitute “local policing body”. 20

Public Audit (Wales) Act 2004

- 176 The Public Audit (Wales) Act 2004 is amended as follows.
- 177 In section 12 (local government bodies in Wales), in subsection (1) –
- (a) in paragraph (f), for “police authority” substitute “police and crime commissioner”; 25
- (b) after paragraph (f), insert –
- “(g) a chief constable of a police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996 for a police area in Wales;”. 30
- 178 (1) Section 40 (documents relating to police authorities) is amended in accordance with this paragraph
- (2) In the title, for “**police authorities**” substitute “**police and crime commissioners and chief constables**”.
- (3) In subsection (1), for “police authority for” substitute “police and crime commissioner for, or the chief constable of a police force maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996 for,”; 35
- (4) In subsection (2) –
- (a) for “police authorities” substitute “police and crime commissioners”;
- (b) for “police authority” substitute “police and crime commissioner”. 40

(5)	After subsection (2) insert—	
	“(3) If the Auditor General for Wales has sent a document (or a copy of a document) relating to one or more chief constables of police forces maintained under section 2 of the Police Act 1996 for a police area in Wales, the Auditor General may send a copy of the document to the persons to whom a copy of a document may be sent under subsection (2).”.	5
179	In section 46 (performance standards: relevant bodies), in subsection (1)(d), for “police authority” substitute “police and crime commissioner”.	
<i>Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007</i>		10
180	The Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007 is amended as follows.	
181	In section 104 (application of Chapter 1 of Part 5: partner authorities), for subsection (2)(e) substitute— “(e) the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as a police authority;”.	15
182	In section 123 (joint overview and scrutiny committees), in subsection (7) for “a police authority” substitute “the Common Council in its capacity as a police authority”.	
183	In section 212 (entities controlled etc by local authorities), in subsection (7), in paragraph (a) of the definition of “local authority”, after “that Act)” insert “, apart from a police and crime commissioner”.	20
<i>Local Democracy, Economic Development and Construction Act 2009</i>		
184	The Local Democracy, Economic Development and Construction Act 2009 is amended as follows.	25
185	In section 23 (duty of public authorities to secure investment), in subsection (2), for paragraph (j) substitute— “(j) the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as a police authority;”.	
186	In section 35 (mutual insurance: supplementary), in subsection (2), for paragraph (k) substitute— “(k) the Common Council of the City of London in its capacity as a police authority;”.	30
<i>Policing and Crime Act 2009</i>		
187	In the Policing and Crime Act 2009, in section 2 (Police Senior Appointments Panel), omit subsection (1).	35
<i>Equality Act 2010</i>		
188	The Equality Act 2010 is amended as follows.	
189	In section 43 (interpretation of section 42), in subsection (3), for “police authority” (in each place) substitute “local policing body or police authority”.	40

- 190 In Schedule 19 (public authorities), in Part 1, omit the words from “A police authority” to “section 5B of that Act.”.

SCHEDULE 16

Section 149

TEMPORARY CLASS DRUG ORDERS

<i>Amendments to the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971</i>	5
1 The Misuse of Drugs Act 1971 is amended as set out in paragraphs 2 to 19.	
2 In section 2 (controlled drugs and their classification for purposes of Act), in subsection (1) –	
(a) in paragraph (a), for the words after “specified” substitute “ –	
(i) in Part I, II or III of Schedule 2, or	10
(ii) in a temporary class drug order as a drug subject to temporary control (but this is subject to section 2A(5));”, and	
(b) at the end of paragraph (b) insert “, and	
(c) the expression “temporary class drug” means any substance or product which is for the time being a controlled drug by virtue of a temporary class drug order;”.	15
3 After section 2 insert –	
“2A Temporary class drug orders	
(1) The Secretary of State may make an order (referred to in this Act as a “temporary class drug order”) specifying any substance or product as a drug subject to temporary control if the following two conditions are met.	20
(2) The first condition is that the substance or product is not a Class A drug, a Class B drug or a Class C drug.	25
(3) The second condition is that it appears to the Secretary of State that –	
(a) the substance or product is a drug that is being, or is likely to be, misused, and	
(b) that misuse is having, or is capable of having, harmful effects.	
(4) A substance or product may be specified in a temporary class drug order by reference to –	30
(a) the name of the substance or product, or	
(b) a description of the substance or product (which may take such form as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate for the purposes of the specification).	35
(5) A substance or product specified in a temporary class drug order as a drug subject to temporary control ceases to be a controlled drug by virtue of the order –	
(a) at the end of one year beginning with the day on which the order comes into force, or	40

- (b) if earlier, upon the coming into force of an Order in Council under section 2(2) by virtue of which the substance or product is specified in Part 1, 2 or 3 of Schedule 2.
- (6) Subsection (5) is without prejudice to the power of the Secretary of State to vary or revoke a temporary class drug order by a further such order. 5
- (7) A temporary class drug order is to be made by statutory instrument.
- (8) A statutory instrument containing a temporary class drug order is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.”. 10
- 4 In section 3 (restriction of importation and exportation of controlled drugs), in subsection (2)(a) after “this Act” insert “or by provision made in a temporary class drug order by virtue of section 7A”.
- 5 In section 4(1) (restriction of production and supply of controlled drugs), after “this Act” insert “, or any provision made in a temporary class drug order by virtue of section 7A,”. 15
- 6 In section 5 (restriction of possession of controlled drugs), after subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Subsections (1) and (2) do not apply in relation to a temporary class drug.”. 20
- 7 In section 7 (authorisation of activities otherwise unlawful under foregoing provisions of Act), after subsection (9) insert –
- “(10) In this section a reference to “controlled drugs” does not include a reference to temporary class drugs (see instead section 7A).”.
- 8 After section 7 insert – 25
- “7A Temporary class drug orders: power to make further provision**
- (1) This section applies if a temporary class drug order specifies a substance or product as a drug subject to temporary control.
- (2) The order may –
- (a) include provision for the exception of the drug from the application of section 3(1)(a) or (b) or 4(1)(a) or (b), 30
- (b) make such other provision as the Secretary of State thinks fit for the purpose of making it lawful for persons to do things in respect of the drug which under section 4(1) it would otherwise be unlawful for them to do, 35
- (c) provide for circumstances in which a person’s possession of the drug is to be treated as excepted possession for the purposes of this Act, and
- (d) include any provision in relation to the drug of a kind that could be made in regulations under section 10 or 22 if the drug were a Class A drug, a Class B drug or a Class C drug (but ignoring section 31(3)). 40
- (3) Provision under subsection (2) may take the form of applying (with or without modifications) any provision made in regulations under section 7(1), 10 or 22. 45

- (4) Provision under subsection (2)(b) may (in particular) provide for the doing of something to be lawful if it is done –
- (a) in circumstances mentioned in section 7(2)(a), or
 - (b) in compliance with such conditions as may be prescribed by virtue of section 7(2)(b). 5
- (5) Section 7(8) applies for the purposes of this section.
- (6) Section 31(1) (general provision as to regulations) applies in relation to a temporary class drug order that contains provision made by virtue of this section as it applies to regulations under this Act.”.
- 9 In section 9A (prohibition of supply etc of articles for administering or preparing controlled drugs), in subsection (4) – 10
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) omit “or”,
 - (b) in paragraph (b) after “of a controlled drug” insert “, other than a temporary class drug,”, and
 - (c) at the end of that paragraph insert “, or 15
- (c) the administration by any person of a temporary class drug to himself in circumstances where having the drug in his possession is to be treated as excepted possession for the purposes of this Act (see section 7A(2)(c)).”.
- 20
- 10 In section 10 (power to make regulations for preventing misuse of controlled drugs), after subsection (2) insert –
- “(3) In this section a reference to “controlled drugs” does not include a reference to temporary class drugs (see instead section 7A).”.
- 11 In section 11 (power to direct special precautions for safe custody of controlled drugs to be taken at certain premises), in subsection (1) after “of this Act” insert “or by provision made in a temporary class drug order by virtue of section 7A that is of a corresponding description to such regulations”. 25
- 12 (1) Section 13 (directions prohibiting prescribing, supply etc of controlled drugs by practitioners in other cases) is amended as follows. 30
- (2) In subsection (1) –
- (a) after “section 10(2) of this Act” insert “or of corresponding provision made in a temporary class drug order”, and
 - (b) after “said paragraph (i)” insert “or of any such corresponding provision”. 35
- (3) After subsection (1) insert –
- “(1A) For the purposes of subsection (1), provision made in a temporary class drug order is “corresponding provision” if it –
- (a) is made by virtue of section 7A(2)(d), and 40
 - (b) is of a corresponding description to regulations made in pursuance of section 10(2)(h) or (as the case may be) 10(2)(i).”.
- 13 In section 18 (miscellaneous offences), after subsection (4) insert –
- “(5) In this section (and in references in Schedule 4 that refer to this section), any reference to regulations made under this Act is to be 45

- taken as including a reference to provision made in a temporary class drug order by virtue of section 7A.
- (6) For this purpose, the reference in subsections (1) and (2) to regulations made in pursuance of section 10(2)(h) or (in the case of subsection (1)) section 10(2)(i) is a reference to any provision of a temporary class drug order which—
- (a) is made by virtue of section 7A(2)(d), and
 - (b) is of a corresponding description to regulations made in pursuance of section 10(2)(h) or (in the case of subsection (1)) section 10(2)(i).”.
- 14 In section 22 (further power to make regulations)—
- (a) renumber the existing provision as subsection (1), and
 - (b) after that subsection insert—
- “(2) The power to make regulations under this section does not apply in relation to temporary class drugs (see instead section 7A).”.
- 15 (1) Section 23 (powers to search and obtain evidence) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2) after “any regulations” insert “or orders”.
 - (3) In subsection (3)(a) after “any regulations” insert “or orders”.
- 16 After section 23 insert—
- “23A Temporary class drugs: further power to search, seize and detain**
- (1) Subsection (3) applies in any case where—
- (a) a constable has reasonable grounds to suspect that a person (“P”) is in possession of a temporary class drug, and
 - (b) it does not appear to the constable that a power under section 23(2) applies to the case.
- (2) But if any provision has been made by virtue of section 7A(2)(c) (excepted possession) that applies to the temporary class drug in question, subsection (3) applies only if the constable has no reason to believe that P’s possession of the drug is to be treated as excepted possession for the purposes of this Act.
- (3) The constable may—
- (a) search P, and detain P for the purposes of searching P;
 - (b) search any vehicle or vessel in which the constable suspects that the drug may be found, and for that purpose require the person in control of the vehicle or vessel to stop it;
 - (c) seize and detain anything found in the course of the search which appears to the constable to be a temporary class drug or to be evidence of an offence under this Act.
- In this subsection, “vessel” has the same meaning as in section 23(2).
- (4) Subsection (5) applies if a constable reasonably believes that anything detained under subsection (3)(c) is a temporary class drug but is not evidence of any offence under this Act.
 - (5) The constable may dispose of the drug in such manner as the constable thinks appropriate.

- (6) A person who intentionally obstructs a constable in the exercise of the constable’s powers under subsection (3) commits an offence.”.
- 17 (1) Section 25 (prosecution and punishment of offences) is amended as follows.
- (2) After subsection (2) insert –
- “(2A) Subsection (2B) applies if an offence specified in the first column of Schedule 4 is committed in relation to a temporary class drug. 5
- (2B) The punishments which may be imposed on a person convicted of the offence summarily or (as the case may be) on indictment in relation to the temporary class drug are the same as those which could be imposed had the person been convicted of the offence in that way in relation to a Class B drug (see the fifth column of Schedule 4).” 10
- (3) After subsection (3) insert –
- “(3A) The punishments which may be imposed on a person convicted of an offence under section 23A(6) are the same as those which, under Schedule 4, may be imposed on a person convicted of an offence under section 23(4).” 15
- 18 In section 30 (licenses and authorities) after “of regulations” insert “or orders”.
- 19 In section 38(1) (special provisions as to Northern Ireland) for “2, 7,” substitute “2, 2A, 7, 7A,” 20

Amendments to other legislation

- 20 In Schedule 1 to the Customs and Excise Management Act 1979 (controlled drugs: variation of punishments for certain offences) –
- (a) in paragraph 1 – 25
- (i) in the opening words for “or a Class B drug” substitute “, Class B drug or a temporary class drug”, and
- (ii) in paragraph (b)(ii) of the substituted words after “Class B drug” insert “or a temporary class drug”, and
- (b) in paragraph 3, for “and “Class C drug”” substitute “, “Class C drug” and “temporary class drug””. 30
- 21 In section 19 of the Criminal Justice (International Co-operation) Act 1990 (ships used for illicit traffic), in subsection (4)(b) after “Class B drug” insert “or a temporary class drug”.

Police Reform and Social Responsibility Bill

A

B I L L

To make provision about the administration and governance of police forces; about the licensing of, and for the imposition of a late night levy in relation to, the sale and supply of alcohol; for the repeal of sections 132 to 138 of the Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 and for the prohibition of certain activities in Parliament Square; to enable provision in local authority byelaws to include powers of seizure and forfeiture; about the control of dangerous or otherwise harmful drugs; to restrict the issue of arrest warrants for certain extra-territorial offences; and for connected purposes.

*Secretary Theresa May
supported by
The Prime Minister,
Secretary William Hague
Mr Chancellor of the Exchequer,
Secretary Kenneth Clarke and
Nick Herbert*

*Ordered, by The House of Commons,
to be Printed, 30 November 2010.*

© Parliamentary copyright House of Commons 2010
*Applications for reproduction should be made in writing to the Information Policy Team,
Office of Public Sector Information, Kew, Richmond, Surrey TW9 4DU*

PUBLISHED BY AUTHORITY OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS
LONDON – THE STATIONERY OFFICE LIMITED
Printed in the United Kingdom by
The Stationery Office Limited
£x.xx

Bill 116

(xxxxxx)

55/1

xxxbarxxx